



Sun Identity Manager Deployment Guide



Sun Microsystems, Inc.
4150 Network Circle
Santa Clara, CA 95054
U.S.A.

Part No: 820-5820

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. has intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in the product that is described in this document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more U.S. patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and in other countries.

U.S. Government Rights – Commercial software. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Parts of the product may be derived from Berkeley BSD systems, licensed from the University of California. UNIX is a registered trademark in the U.S. and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, the Solaris logo, the Java Coffee Cup logo, docs.sun.com, Java, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. or its subsidiaries in the U.S. and other countries. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. Products bearing SPARC trademarks are based upon an architecture developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc.

The OPEN LOOK and Sun™ Graphical User Interface was developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. for its users and licensees. Sun acknowledges the pioneering efforts of Xerox in researching and developing the concept of visual or graphical user interfaces for the computer industry. Sun holds a non-exclusive license from Xerox to the Xerox Graphical User Interface, which license also covers Sun's licensees who implement OPEN LOOK GUIs and otherwise comply with Sun's written license agreements.

Products covered by and information contained in this publication are controlled by U.S. Export Control laws and may be subject to the export or import laws in other countries. Nuclear, missile, chemical or biological weapons or nuclear maritime end uses or end users, whether direct or indirect, are strictly prohibited. Export or reexport to countries subject to U.S. embargo or to entities identified on U.S. export exclusion lists, including, but not limited to, the denied persons and specially designated nationals lists is strictly prohibited.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

Copyright 2009 Sun Microsystems, Inc. 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. Tous droits réservés.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. détient les droits de propriété intellectuelle relatifs à la technologie incorporée dans le produit qui est décrit dans ce document. En particulier, et ce sans limitation, ces droits de propriété intellectuelle peuvent inclure un ou plusieurs brevets américains ou des applications de brevet en attente aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.

Cette distribution peut comprendre des composants développés par des tierces personnes.

Certains composants de ce produit peuvent être dérivées du logiciel Berkeley BSD, licenciés par l'Université de Californie. UNIX est une marque déposée aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays; elle est licenciée exclusivement par X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, le logo Solaris, le logo Java Coffee Cup, docs.sun.com, Java et Solaris sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc., ou ses filiales, aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Les produits portant les marques SPARC sont basés sur une architecture développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc.

L'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et Sun a été développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc. pour ses utilisateurs et licenciés. Sun reconnaît les efforts de pionniers de Xerox pour la recherche et le développement du concept des interfaces d'utilisation visuelle ou graphique pour l'industrie de l'informatique. Sun détient une licence non exclusive de Xerox sur l'interface d'utilisation graphique Xerox, cette licence couvrant également les licenciés de Sun qui mettent en place l'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et qui, en outre, se conforment aux licences écrites de Sun.

Les produits qui font l'objet de cette publication et les informations qu'il contient sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et peuvent être soumis au droit d'autres pays dans le domaine des exportations et importations. Les utilisations finales, ou utilisateurs finaux, pour des armes nucléaires, des missiles, des armes chimiques ou biologiques ou pour le nucléaire maritime, directement ou indirectement, sont strictement interdites. Les exportations ou réexportations vers des pays sous embargo des Etats-Unis, ou vers des entités figurant sur les listes d'exclusion d'exportation américaines, y compris, mais de manière non exclusive, la liste de personnes qui font objet d'un ordre de ne pas participer, d'une façon directe ou indirecte, aux exportations des produits ou des services qui sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et la liste de ressortissants spécifiquement désignés, sont rigoureusement interdites.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ETAT" ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DECLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISEE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE A LA QUALITE MARCHANDE, A L'APTITUDE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU A L'ABSENCE DE CONTREFACON.

Contents

Preface	9
1 Working with Attributes	15
Related Chapters	15
What are Attributes?	15
Types of Attributes	16
Using Attribute Conditions	21
Attribute Condition Operators	21
Implicitly ANDED	22
Using Secret Attributes	23
2 Working with Authorization Types	25
What are Authorization Types?	25
How Identity Manager Uses Authorization Types	26
Why Use Authorization Types?	26
Architectural Features	27
Configuration:AuthorizationTypes Object	27
AuthType Element	27
Authorization Subtype Permissions	28
Authorization Types and Capabilities	28
AdminGroups Objects	28
EndUser Capability	29
Creating an Authorization Type	29
Assigning an Authorization Type to a Repository	29
Example: Setting End-User Authorization Types	30
Example: Using Authorization Types to Restrict Visibility on Resources	30
Example: Granting Access to a Specific Part of Identity Manager	31

3	Data Loading and Synchronization	33
	Types of Data Loading	34
	Discovery	34
	Reconciliation	36
	Active Sync	38
	Summary of Data Loading Types	38
	Load Operation Context	39
	Managing Reconciliation	40
	Reconciliation Policy	40
	Resource Scheduling	46
	Reconcile Configuration Object	47
	Managing Active Sync	48
	How Active Sync-Enabled Adapters Work	48
	Using Forms	52
4	Dataloading Scenario	61
	Assessing Your Environment	61
	Choosing the First Resource	62
	Choosing the First Data Loading Process	64
	Using Load from File	65
	Using Load from Resource	66
	Using Create Bulk Actions	67
	Using Reconciliation	68
	Preparing for Data Loading	68
	Configuring an Adapter	68
	Setting Account ID and Password Policies	68
	Creating a Data Loading Account	70
	Assigning User Forms	70
	Linking to Accounts on Other Resources	71
	Defining Custom Correlation Keys	72
	Creating Custom Rules	74
	Manually Linking Accounts	74
	Example Scenarios	76
	Active Directory, SecurID, and Solaris	76
	LDAP, PeopleSoft, and Remedy	80

Expedited Bulk Add Scenario	86
5 Data Exporter	89
What is Data Exporter?	89
Exportable Data Types	90
Data Exporter Architecture	91
Planning for Data Exporter	93
Database Considerations	93
Export Server Considerations	95
Loading the Default DDL	96
DB2	96
MySQL	96
Oracle	97
SQL Server	97
Upgrading Data Exporter	98
Customizing Data Exporter	99
Identity Manager ObjectClass Schema	99
Export Schema	100
Modifying the Warehouse Interface Code	101
Generating a New Factory Class	102
Adding Localization Support for the WIC	103
Troubleshooting Data Exporter	103
Beans and Other Tools	103
Model Serialization Limits	103
Repository Polling Configuration	104
Tracing and Logging	104
6 Configuring User Actions	105
Adding Custom Tasks	105
Setting Up Custom Task Authorization	105
Adding a Task to the Repository	107
Configuring User Actions	110
▼ To Configure User Actions	110

7 Private Labeling of Identity Manager	115
Private Labeling Tasks	115
Architectural Features	115
Style Sheets	116
Default Text	116
Text Attributes	117
Default Style Settings	117
Customized File	117
JSP Files	117
WPMessages_en.properties File	117
Customizing Headers	117
Changing Header Appearance	117
Customizing Identity Manager Pages	118
Creating a Custom Message Catalog	118
Customizing the Home Page	118
Changing Default Information Displayed in the Identity Manager User Interface Home Page	121
Changing the Appearance of the User Interface Navigation Menus	122
Changing Font Characteristics	122
Sample Labeling Exercises	123
Replacing the Identity Manager Logo with a Custom Logo	124
Changing Masthead Appearance	124
Changing Navigation Tabs	125
Changing Tab Panel Tabs	126
Changing Sorting Table Header	128
Changing User / Resource Table Component	128
Changing Identity Manager Behavior on Commonly Used Pages	129
8 Customizing Message Catalogs	133
Advantages of Custom Message Catalogs	133
How Identity Manager Retrieves Message Catalog Entries	133
Message Catalog Format	134
Creating a Customized Message Catalog	134
Example Message Catalog	135

9 Developing Custom Adapters	137
Before You Begin	137
Intended Audience	138
Important Notes	138
Related Documentation	138
What is a Resource Adapter?	139
What Are Standard Resource Adapters?	139
What Are Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapters?	140
What is a Resource Object?	145
What is a Resource Adapter Class?	145
Preparing for Adapter Development	146
Become Familiar with Adapter Source Code	146
Profile the Resource	161
Decide Which Classes and Methods to Include	163
Review the REF Kit	164
Set Up the Build Environment	165
Writing Custom Adapters	166
Process Overview	167
Rename the Skeleton File	168
Edit the Source File	168
Map the Attributes	169
Specify the Identity Template	170
Write the Adapter Methods	171
Configure the Adapter to Support Pass-Through Authentication	182
Define the Resource Object Components	184
Installing Custom Adapters	190
▼ To Install a Customized Resource Adapter	190
Testing Custom Adapters	191
Unit Testing Your Adapter	192
Compatibility Testing Your Adapter	192
Testing the Resource Object	209
Troubleshooting Custom Adapters	211
Maintaining Custom Adapters	211

10	Editing Configuration Objects	213
	Data Storage	213
	Object Naming Conventions	214
	Viewing and Editing Configuration Objects	215
	IDM Schema Configuration Object	216
	UserUIConfig Object	219
	RepositoryConfiguration Object	219
	WorkItemTypes Configuration Object	220
	SystemConfiguration Object	221
	Role Configuration Object	224
	End User Tasks Object	227
	Refreshing User Objects	228
11	Enabling Internationalization	229
	Architectural Overview	229
	Typical Entry	230
	Enabling Support for Multiple Languages	231
	Step One: Download and Install Localized Files	231
	Step Two: Edit the <code>waveset.properties</code> File	232
	Maintaining ASCII Account IDs and Email Addresses During Anonymous Enrollment Processing	233
	▼ To Maintain Account ID and Email Address Values	233
	Index	235

Preface

This *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Technical Deployment Guide* publication provides an overview of the reference and procedural information you will use to customize Sun Identity Manager for your environment.

Who Should Use This Book

The *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Technical Deployment Guide* was designed for deployers and administrators who will create and update workflows, views, rules, system configurations and other configuration files necessary to customize Identity Manager for a customer installation during different phases of product deployment.

Deployers should have a background in programming and should be comfortable with XML, Java, Emacs and/or IDEs such as Eclipse or NetBeans.

How This Book Is Organized

This book is organized into these chapters:

- [Chapter 1, “Working with Attributes,”](#) introduces Identity attributes and how to use this feature to streamline the data flow through your Identity Manager deployment.
- [Chapter 2, “Working with Authorization Types,”](#) describes how to assign authorization rights to Identity Manager objects.
- [Chapter 3, “Data Loading and Synchronization,”](#) presents an overview of the reconciliation and other mechanisms for loading account information into Identity Manager. Reconciliation compares the set of users defined in Identity Manager to the set of accounts that are defined on an Identity Manager resource.
- [Chapter 4, “Dataloading Scenario,”](#) provides tips to consider when preparing to load account information into Identity Manager, including sample scenarios that illustrate some of the issues that you might encounter.
- [Chapter 5, “Data Exporter,”](#) describes how to plan for and implement the Data Exporter feature.

- [Chapter 6, “Configuring User Actions,”](#) describes how to add custom tasks to the Identity Manager Administrator Interface and configure user actions that you can execute from two areas of the interface.
- [Chapter 7, “Private Labeling of Identity Manager,”](#) describes how to customize IDM colors, logos, and header and footer content to meet the style standards of your organization.
- [Chapter 8, “Customizing Message Catalogs,”](#) describes how to create a message catalog so that you can override the default text displayed on the user and administrator interfaces.
- [Chapter 9, “Developing Custom Adapters,”](#) describes how to create custom Identity Manager resource adapters that are tailored to your company or customers.
- [Chapter 10, “Editing Configuration Objects,”](#) provides an overview of configuration objects and a discussion of the `UserUIConfig` object.
- [Chapter 11, “Enabling Internationalization,”](#) provides information on configuring Identity Manager to use multiple languages or display a language other than English.

Related Books

Sun provides additional documentation and information to help you install, use, and configure Identity Manager. The Sun Identity Manager 8.1 library includes the following publications:

Primary Audience	Title	Description
All Audiences	Sun Identity Manager Overview	Provides an overview of Identity Manager features and functionality. Provides product architecture information and describes how Identity Manager integrates with other Sun products, such as Sun Open SSO Enterprise and Role Manager.
	Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Release Notes	Describes known issues, fixed issues, and late-breaking information not already provided in the Identity Manager documentation set.
System Administrators	Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Installation	Describes how to install Identity Manager and optional components such as the Sun Identity Manager Gateway and PasswordSync.
	Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Upgrade	Provides instructions on how to upgrade from an older version of Identity Manager to a newer version.
	Sun Identity Manager 8.1 System Administrator’s Guide	Contains information and instructions to help system administrators manage, tune, and troubleshoot their Identity Manager installation.

Primary Audience	Title	Description
Business Administrators	<i>Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Business Administrator's Guide</i>	Describes how to use Identity Manager's provisioning and auditing features. Contains information on the user interfaces, user and account management, reporting, and more.
System Integrators	<i>Sun Identity Manager Deployment Guide</i>	Describes how to deploy Identity Manager in complex IT environments. Topics covered include working with identity attributes, data loading and synchronization, configuring user actions, applying custom branding, and so on.
	<i>Sun Identity Manager Deployment Reference</i>	Contains information on workflows, forms, views, and rules, as well as the XPRESS language.
	<i>Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Resources Reference</i>	Provides information about installing, configuring, and using resource adapters.
	<i>Sun Identity Manager Service Provider 8.1 Deployment</i>	Describes how to deploy Sun Identity Manager Service Provider, and how views, forms, and resources differ from the standard Identity Manager product.
	<i>Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Web Services</i>	Describes how to configure SPML support, which SPML features are supported (and why), and how to extend support in the field.

In addition, the <http://docs.sun.com> web site enables you to access Sun technical documentation online. You can browse the archive or search for a specific book title or subject.

Documentation Updates

Corrections and updates to this and other Identity Manager publications are posted to the Identity Manager Documentation Updates website:

<http://blogs.sun.com/idmdocupdates/>

An RSS feed reader can be used to periodically check the website and notify you when updates are available. To subscribe, download a feed reader and click a link under Feeds on the right side of the page. Starting with version 8.0, separate feeds are available for each major release.

Related Third-Party Web Site References

Third-party URLs are referenced in this document and provide additional, related information.

Note – Sun is not responsible for the availability of third-party web sites mentioned in this document. Sun does not endorse and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, or other materials that are available on or through such sites or resources. Sun will not be responsible or liable for any actual or alleged damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by or in connection with use of or reliance on any such content, goods, or services that are available on or through such sites or resources.

Documentation, Support, and Training

The Sun web site provides information about the following additional resources:

- [Documentation](http://www.sun.com/documentation/) (<http://www.sun.com/documentation/>)
- [Support](http://www.sun.com/support/) (<http://www.sun.com/support/>)
- [Training](http://www.sun.com/training/) (<http://www.sun.com/training/>)

Sun Welcomes Your Comments

Sun is interested in improving its documentation and welcomes your comments and suggestions. To share your comments, go to <http://docs.sun.com> and click Feedback.

Typographic Conventions

The following table describes the typographic conventions that are used in this book.

TABLE P-1 Typographic Conventions

Typeface	Meaning	Example
AaBbCc123	The names of commands, files, and directories, and onscreen computer output	Edit your <code>.login</code> file. Use <code>ls -a</code> to list all files. <code>machine_name% you have mail.</code>
AaBbCc123	What you type, contrasted with onscreen computer output	<code>machine_name% su</code> Password:

TABLE P-1 Typographic Conventions (Continued)

Typeface	Meaning	Example
<i>aabbcc123</i>	Placeholder: replace with a real name or value	The command to remove a file is <i>rm filename</i> .
<i>AaBbCc123</i>	Book titles, new terms, and terms to be emphasized	Read Chapter 6 in the <i>User's Guide</i> . A <i>cache</i> is a copy that is stored locally. Do <i>not</i> save the file. Note: Some emphasized items appear bold online.

Shell Prompts in Command Examples

The following table shows the default UNIX® system prompt and superuser prompt for the C shell, Bourne shell, and Korn shell.

TABLE P-2 Shell Prompts

Shell	Prompt
C shell	machine_name%
C shell for superuser	machine_name#
Bourne shell and Korn shell	\$
Bourne shell and Korn shell for superuser	#

Working with Attributes

This chapter presents a conceptual overview of attributes as used in Identity Manager deployments. The topics in this chapter include

- “Related Chapters” on page 15
- “What are Attributes?” on page 15
- “Using Attribute Conditions” on page 21
- “Using Secret Attributes” on page 23

Related Chapters

Attributes are manipulated as part of many Identity Manager operations and are discussed throughout the documentation set. The following chapters contain a substantial amount of information related to attributes:

- Chapter 3, “Identity Manager Views,” in *Sun Identity Manager Deployment Reference* provides an extensive discussion of view attributes, registering attributes, and deferred attributes.
- *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Resources Reference* provides information about resource attributes.

What are Attributes?

Attributes are name-value pairs that are used to define and manipulate characteristics of Identity Manager objects as well as external resources. Identity Manager components such as forms, workflows, and rules call attributes as an essential part of accessing and transforming data in their regular operations.

Types of Attributes

Although objects in an Identity Manager deployment can contain a variety of attributes, you typically work with the attribute types described in the following sections:

- “Summary Attributes” on page 16
- “Queryable Attributes” on page 16
- “Inline Attributes” on page 16
- “Extended Attributes” on page 17
- “Operational Attributes” on page 18
- “View Attributes” on page 19
- “Resource User Attributes” on page 19
- “Identity System User Attributes” on page 19
- “Other Standard Attributes” on page 20

Summary Attributes

Every persistent object exposes a set of *summary attributes*. Summary attributes are configured in the Identity Manager Schema Configuration object and contain the values that are returned for each item in the result of a list operation. Each `PersistentObject` subclass can extend the default set of attributes by overriding the `getSummaryAttributes` method.

Summary attributes are typically single-valued, because there is a limit to the total length of summary attributes when serialized to a string.

You configure these attributes for user objects directly through the Identity Manager Schema Configuration object. For more information, see [“IDM Schema Configuration Object” on page 216](#).

Note – The `SummaryAttrNames` section of `UserUIConfig` is no longer used in Identity Manager.

Queryable Attributes

Every persistent object exposes a set of *queryable attributes*. Queryable attributes contain the set of values used for filtering and matching, and these attributes are configured in the Identity Manager Schema Configuration object. Queryable attributes can be multi-valued.

Note – The `QueryableAttrNames` section of `UserUIConfig` is no longer used in Identity Manager.

Inline Attributes

You can designate up to five queryable attributes for each object type as *inline attributes*. Inline attributes are configured in the Identity Manager Repository Configuration object.

Note – Inline attributes are no longer configured in `UserUIConfig`.

Designating an attribute as *inline* asks the data store to optimize the performance of queries against that attribute.

Identity Manager typically stores each value of a queryable attribute as a row in an attribute table that is separate from the main object table. The attribute table can be joined to the object table to select objects that match an `AttributeCondition`.

Identity Manager stores the value of an *inline* attribute, however, directly in the object table for that type. Designating an attribute as inline allows Identity Manager to generate more efficient SQL. A column expression on the main object table is faster than a JOIN to (or an EXISTS predicate against) the corresponding attribute table. This improves the performance of any query against the attribute.

You can characterize inline attributes as follows:

- **An inline attribute must be single-valued** because its value is stored in a single column of the parent row in the object table.
- **Up to five queryable attributes can be inline for a type** because the object table contains only five columns that can be used to store arbitrary attribute values.
- **The same set of queryable attributes is designated as inline for every instance of a type** because the correspondence between the column value and the name of an attribute is specified only by the configuration. That is, the configuration of inline attributes for a type is the only way the repository knows which attribute is stored in which column.

Extended Attributes

Extended attributes are just attributes that are not built-in, such as `employeeNumber` for `User`. Most customers want to be able to query by `employeeNumber`, so you can add this attribute as a queryable extended attribute through the configuration.

Note – It is a *best practice* to prefix extended attributes with a deployment-specific prefix to prevent potential conflicts with new core attributes in future releases of Identity Manager.

For example, when adding an extended attribute to `User` to record the `employeeNumber`, use a prefix associated with the company, such as `acme_employeeNumber`. If a future Identity Manager release incorporates a built-in user attribute named `employeeNumber`, the two attributes will remain distinct. Otherwise the built-in attribute takes precedence.

Because extended attributes are not built-in, these attributes must be in the `<IDMAttributeConfigurations>` section of the IDM Schema Configuration object. This

section captures the attribute names, syntax (such as `string`, `int`, and `date`), and whether the attribute is single-valued or multi-valued. The `IDMObjectClassConfiguration` captures which attributes are in which object classes because named attributes can actually be in more than one object class, such as `MemberObjectGroups`.

Note – The `IDM Schema Configuration` object is protected with the `IDMSchemaConfig` `authType`.

Administrators needing to view or edit the Identity Manager schema for Users or Roles must have the `IDMSchemaConfig AdminGroup` (capability) assigned. The `Configurator` user has this `AdminGroup` assigned by default.

For more information about `User` extended attributes, see the discussion about the `accounts[lighthouse]` attribute of the `User` view in the *Views* chapter of *Deployment Reference*.

You can expose built-in attributes and extended attributes as *queryable* or *summary*. Some built-in attributes have `REFERENCE` syntax, but extended attributes are not allowed to be `REFERENCE`.

The `<Comments>` section of the effective schema contains information about available internal attributes, as well as extended attributes for relevant objectclasses. You can view this information from the Identity Manager Debug pages by clicking the `Display Schema` button and selecting `ObjectClass Schema` from the list.

Note – Extended attributes are supported for `User`, `Role`, and extensions of `Role` only.

Some built-in attribute references for `User` and `Role` are not queryable or summary by default, but you can expose the following attributes:

- For `User`:
 - `MemberAdminGroups`
 - `adminRoles`
 - `adminGroupsRule`
- For `Role` and extensions of `Role`: `role_applications`

For attribute definitions, click the `Display Schema` button on the `Debug Pages` to view the `IDMObjectClass` schema. Administrators must have `View` rights for `IDMSchemaConfig` to view the `IDMObjectClass` schema.

Operational Attributes

Identity Manager predefines several attributes that are required for the repository to work correctly. `ID`, `type`, and `name` are especially important.

Every `PersistentObject` stored in the repository has a *globally unique internal identifier (ID)*. An ID value is unique across time and space, and a generated ID value is never re-used. (Some predefined Identity Manager objects have well known identifiers that are defined as program constants. These are known as *fake IDs*.) The repository ensures that an object's ID will never change.

Objects of the same type typically *map* to the same Java class. That is, they are constructed as instances of the same Java class when *deserialized*. Where there is not a one-to-one correspondence between type and Java class, every object of the same type at least uses the same mechanism to look up the corresponding Java class. (For example, some types of objects expose a `class` attribute that contains the fully qualified class name.)

An object's name must be unique within *type*. That is, only one object of a type can have a particular name. (However, another object of a different type can have the same name.) Thus, each type effectively defines a subordinate namespace. You can change an object's name, but you cannot change an object's ID.

View Attributes

A *view* is a collection of name/value pairs that are assembled from one or more objects stored in the repository, or read from resources. The value of a view attribute can be atomic, such as a string, a collection such as a list, or reference to another object.

Whenever you create or modify a user account from the Identity Manager Administrator or User Interfaces, you are indirectly working with the User view. Workflow processes also interact with the User view. When a request is passed to a workflow process, the attributes are sent to the process as a view. When a manual process is requested during a workflow process, the attributes in the user view can be displayed and modified further.

Working with views is extensively documented in the *Views* chapter of Deployment Reference.

Resource User Attributes

Resource User attributes map Identity Manager account attributes to resource account attributes in a schema map (right side). The list of attributes varies for each resource. You can remove unused attributes from the schema map page. However, adding attributes might require editing the adapter code.

The Resource User attributes are used only when the adapter communicates with the resource.

Working with Resource User attributes is extensively documented in Resource Reference.

Identity System User Attributes

Identity System User attributes define an internal Identity Manager value that corresponds to a Resource User attribute. The Identity System User attributes can be used in rules, forms, and other Identity Manager-specific functions. Identity Manager displays these attributes on the left side of the schema map.

Working with Identity System User attributes is extensively documented in Resource Reference.

Other Standard Attributes

You can use some of the other standard attributes to restrict access to objects (such as `MemberObjectGroups`, `subType`, or `authType`) or to represent historical information (such as the creator and date created.).

MemberObjectGroups

Every persistent object belongs to at least one object group. Each value of this multi-valued attribute is the ID of an `ObjectGroup` object.

`ObjectGroups` are exposed as `Organizations` in the Identity Manager Administrator and User Interfaces. `ObjectGroup` membership governs Session-level authorization (that is, administrator and user access to repository objects), but the repository itself ignores object group membership.

creator, createDate, lastModifier and lastModDate

These values record historical information about each object. These attributes are maintained (but are not used) by the repository.

PropertyList

Every persistent object can contain an arbitrary list of `Properties`. This feature is not widely used.

subType

Every persistent object can have a `subType` attribute. For example, Identity Manager uses `Attribute.SUBTYPE` to select separate lists of the available correlation rules and confirmation rules.

authType

The `authType` attribute allows fine-grain authorization to be performed (that is, access to be scoped or restricted) for users who do not control any organization (object group). These subjects would otherwise have no access in Identity Manager's standard authorization scheme.

Using Attribute Conditions

An *attribute condition* is an expression that tests the values of an attribute. Attribute conditions are commonly used to select the subset of objects that match certain criteria.

Each attribute condition expresses a single criterion and consists of:

- Attribute name (of a queryable attribute)
- Operator (a kind of check or comparison to be made)
- Operand (a specified set of values)

Attribute Condition Operators

AttributeCondition defines the following operators.

TABLE 1-1 Attribute Condition Operators

Operator	Description
EQ, EQUALS	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically equal to (ignoring case) the operand.
NE, NOT_EQUALS	Object has no value for the specified attribute that is lexically equal to (ignoring case) the operand.
GT, GREATER_THAN	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically greater than (ignoring case) the operand.
GE	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically greater than or equal to (ignoring case) the operand.
LE	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically less than or equal to (ignoring case) the operand.
LT, LESS_THAN	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically less than (ignoring case) the operand.
STARTS_WITH	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is an initial substring (ignoring case) of the operand.
ENDS_WITH	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is a final substring (ignoring case) of the operand.
CONTAINS	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is a substring (ignoring case) of the operand.
IS_PRESENT	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute. (This operator takes no operand.)
NOT_PRESENT	Object has no value for the specified attribute. (This operator takes no operand.)

TABLE 1-1 Attribute Condition Operators (Continued)

Operator	Description
IN, IS_ONE_OF	Object has at least one value for the specified attribute that is lexically equal to (ignoring case) one of the values in the (list) operand.

Note – RelationalDataStore optimizes evaluation by translating each attribute condition into an appropriate predicate that becomes part of the WHERE clause for the operation. However, no special logic is required to handle multi-valued attributes. RelationalDataStore automatically generates appropriate SQL DML to handle this.

An attribute condition applies to *each value of an attribute*. (Specifically, operator NE is true if, and only if, an object has no value for the specified attribute that equals the specified operand. Operator EQ is true if an object has at least one value for the specified attribute that matches the specified operand.)

Implicitly ANDED

A set of attribute conditions is implicitly ANDED. This means that a set of attribute conditions evaluates to true if, and only if, every attribute condition in the set evaluates to true. Conversely, a set of attribute conditions evaluates to false as soon as any attribute condition in the set evaluates to false.

Identity Manager attribute conditions expose operators that are generally useful. Typically, you can express a set of selection criteria using Identity Manager attribute conditions. A few criteria cannot be expressed, but even these are often better addressed by adding (or changing the representation of) a queryable attribute.

Example Scenario: Populating Organizations with User Member Rules

You can use the following attributes to determine the set of users in a given organization:

- **External (to Identity Manager) resource account attributes.** In this case, you need both the resource account ID and the resource name (for example, acctid:resname) to find the matching Identity Manager user because more than one Identity Manager user might have the same acctid but on different resources.
- **Identity Manager user account attributes** (for example, name, location, manager).

To get the “or’ed” effect, do not use multiple attribute conditions. Instead, use the “is one of” operator with a list of operands, as follows:

```
<list>
  <new class='com.waveset.object.AttributeCondition'>
    <s>firstname</s>
```

```

    <s>is one of</s>
    <list>
      <s>Nicola</s>
      <s>Paolo</s>
    </list>
  </new>
</list>

```

Example Scenario: Including All Users Without Administrative Roles

You need a rule to include all users except those with specified administrative roles.

Because attribute conditions are implicitly ANDed together, you can use two attribute conditions:

- Condition that selects users with at least one admin role (which in effect excludes non-administrative users). This condition specifies that a matching user has at least one value for the `adminRoles` attribute.

```

<AttributeCondition>
  <s>adminRoles</s>
  <s>exists</s>
</AttributeCondition>

```

- Condition that excludes users with any of a set of specific admin roles. This condition specifies that no value of the `adminRoles` attribute is `ar1` or `ar2`.

```

<AttributeCondition>
  <s>adminRoles</s>
  <s>is not</s>
  <list>
    <s>ar1</s>
    <s>ar2</s>
  </list>
</AttributeCondition>

```

Taken together, these conditions specify that the user must have an admin role that is not in the specified list.

Using Secret Attributes

Identity Manager displays attribute values in clear text on the Results pages, even when you have set the attribute for display with asterisks in an Edit form. To prevent attribute values from being displayed in the cache, you can register the attribute as *secret*. Secret attribute values are not displayed in clear text in the browser cache, but these attributes are processed by Identity Manager just like any other attribute.

For example, a social security number is an attribute that administrators typically register as a secret attribute.

When rendering the results table, Identity Manager checks to determine whether any of the attributes are registered as secret, and displays the values of secret attributes with asterisks only.

To register a secret attribute, add that attribute to the System Configuration object as follows:

```
<Attribute name='secretAttributes'>
  <List>
    <String>email</String>
    <String>myAttribute</String>
  </List>
</Attribute>
```

Working with Authorization Types

This chapter presents a conceptual overview of authorization types (AuthTypes) as used in Identity Manager deployments. Topics in this chapter include

- “What are Authorization Types?” on page 25
- “How Identity Manager Uses Authorization Types” on page 26
- “Why Use Authorization Types?” on page 26
- “Architectural Features” on page 27
- “Authorization Types and Capabilities” on page 28
- “Creating an Authorization Type” on page 29

What are Authorization Types?

Identity Manager provides *authorization types* as a mechanism for assigning authorization rights to objects without requiring code changes. This extensible mechanism is independent of the repository storage type, and is especially useful for `TaskDefinition` and `Configuration` objects. Although these objects share the same repository type, each object type can perform vastly different functions that consequently require different authorization. For example, rules must have an authorization type of `UserMembersRule` to appear in the User Members Rules drop-down list. Both default and custom authorization types reside in the `Configuration:AuthorizationTypes` object.

Authorization types are *repository-type independent*, which means that you can define one authorization type and assign it to, for example, both `Configuration` and `Rule` objects. This allows you to use authorization types to filter lists of objects of a single type, or as a means of granting access to a related set of objects to a subset of Identity Manager administrators with a specific capability.

How Identity Manager Uses Authorization Types

Identity Manager uses authorization types during access checks when comparing the caller's capabilities against an object's authorization type. When an authorization type extends an existing repository type, access control follows the implied 'inheritance' change. Specifically, if an administrator has rights on the parent type, he has the same rights on the child type. However, if an administrator has rights on the child type, but no rights on the parent, then the administrator can access objects of the child type only.

For example, consider the following authorization types, administrators and objects:

Authorization settings:

```
Configuration (repository type)
<AuthType name='Fruit' extends='Configuration'/>
<AuthType name='Vegetable' extends='Configuration'/>
```

Rights are assigned as follows:

AdminA (has Right.VIEW on Configuration)

AdminB (has Right.VIEW on Fruit)

AdminC (has Right.VIEW on Vegetable)

ObjectA of type Configuration, no authtype

ObjectB of type Configuration, authtype == Fruit

ObjectC of type Configuration, authtype == Vegetable

The preceding authorization settings determine the following access privileges on the specified objects:

- AdminA can view ObjectA, ObjectB and ObjectC
- AdminB can view ObjectB only
- AdminC can view ObjectC only

Why Use Authorization Types?

You use authorization types within your deployment to accomplish the following:

- Restrict a list of a single type of objects to those specific for a purpose (very similar to SubType). For example, `<AuthType name='foo' extends='moo'/>`
- Group objects of different types to make them available to a specific class of administrators. For example, `<AuthType name='foo' extends='red,green,blue'/>`

This second approach is much harder to configure because administrators with rights on the parent types (red, green, blue) will also have access to type 'foo'.

Architectural Features

The primary architectural feature of authorization types is the `Configuration:AuthorizationTypes` object. You can add or remove authorization types by modifying this object.

Configuration:AuthorizationTypes Object

The `Configuration:AuthorizationTypes` object defines valid authorization types. Each authorization type is declared in an `<AuthType>` element:

```
<AuthType name='SPML' extends='Configuration'/>
```

The `AuthTypes` element contains a list of `AuthType` elements. Each `AuthType` has, at minimum, a `name` attribute and typically an `extends` attribute. The value of the `extends` attribute must be the name of another authorization type or repository type.

AuthType Element

This element requires the `name` property. The example below displays the correct syntax for an `<AuthType>` element. The following example shows how to add a custom task to move multiple users into a new organization.

```
<Configuration name='AuthorizationTypes'>
  <Extension>
    <AuthTypes>
      <AuthType name='Move User' extends='TaskDefinition,TaskInstance,TaskTemplate'/>
    </AuthTypes>
  </Extension>
</Configuration>
```

The `AuthType` element supports the following attributes.

TABLE 2-1 AuthType Attributes

AuthType Object Attributes	Description
name	Identifies the authorization type.

TABLE 2-1 AuthType Attributes (Continued)

AuthType Object Attributes	Description
extends	Specifies the name of an authorization type repository type that is the supertype of this type.
displayName	Provides an alternate display name for this type, typically a message catalog key.
auditKey	Identifies the audit log key to be used for audit records associated with objects of this type. If none is specified, the audit key of the base type is used.
allowedRights	Provides a comma delimited list of right names. This defines the rights that can be used with this authorization type in a permission definition. If not specified, all rights are allowed.

Authorization Subtype Permissions

Identity Manager uses the `extends` attribute to define the supertype of an authorization type. Supertype permissions are inherited by the subtype. For example, if a user has view rights on `TaskDefinition`, they would also have view rights on `UsageReportTask` and all other subtypes of `TaskDefinition`.

Although you can edit the `AuthorizationTypes` object only in XML, you can define permissions that reference authorization types from the Capability page. (You can access this page under the Capabilities subtab of the Security tab.)

Authorization Types and Capabilities

Authorization types are a key component of the End User authorization model. With authorization types, you can define capabilities, or `AdminGroups`, and then assign those capabilities to users.

AdminGroups Objects

After defining an authorization type, you can reference it in the Permission objects stored within `AdminGroup` objects. The following XML example defines an `AdminGroup` (called a *capability*) that you can assign to a user.

```
<AdminGroup name='EndUser'>
  <Permissions>
    <Permission type='EndUserTask' rights='View'/>
    <Permission type='EndUserRule' rights='View'/>
  </Permissions>
  <MemberObjectGroups>
    <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#All' name='All'/>
  </MemberObjectGroups>
</AdminGroup>
```

In this example, the two `Permission` elements both use type names that are authorization types rather than repository types. Only `TaskDefinition` objects that are assigned an `EndUserTask` authorization type will be accessible to a user that holds this capability. (A *capability* conveys set of rights to one or more authorization types or repository types.) Because authorization types are essentially hierarchical with other authorization types and repository types, having rights on a parent in the “type hierarchy” grants the same rights to all children.

EndUser Capability

You can use the `AdminGroup` `EndUser` capability to assign permissions to non-administrative users that typically do not have assigned capabilities and do not control any organizations. The default definition of this capability was given in the example in the `Permission Extensions` section.

Identity Manager implicitly assigns all users the `EndUser` capability. This capability permits users to view several types of objects, including tasks, rules, roles, and resources. Although you can assign capabilities to end users, you may prefer not to. Identity Manager defines a user with explicitly assigned capabilities as an administrator, and the system caches information about administrators that results in an effective upper limit on the number of administrators an installation can have.

You can use the `EndUserLibrary` authorization type. The `EndUser` capability (or `AdminGroup`) has `List` and `View` access to `Libraries` with the `EndUserLibrary` `authType`.

To give users access to the contents of a `Library`, set `authType='EndUserLibrary'` and ensure that the `Library's` `MemberObjectGroup` is set to `All`.

Creating an Authorization Type

You can create a new authorization type by extending the existing `TaskDefinition`, `TaskInstance`, and `TaskTemplate` authorization types. You can use one of the following methods to add an authorization type:

- Create a new authorization type using the `<AuthType>` element.
- Edit the `Authorization Types Configuration` object in the repository by adding the new authorization type element (`AuthType`) for your task.

Assigning an Authorization Type to a Repository

By setting an authorization type on a repository, you can restrict which users can see, modify, or delete particular object types. To define an authorization type for a repository type, set the authorization type name to the name of a repository type and omit the `extends` attribute.

Example: Setting End-User Authorization Types

Identity Manager implements the User Admin role and assigns it to all users by default. This role encapsulates the EndUser AdminGroup that provides two end-user authorization types (AuthTypes) and several list permissions for various object types.

These end-user authorization types include:

- **EndUserRule.** Allows access to rule objects that have the EndUserRule AuthType specified in the object, as follows:

```
<Rule authType='EndUserRule' ...>
```

- **EndUserTask.** Allows access to TaskDefinition objects that have the EndUserTask AuthType specified in the object, as follows:

```
<TaskDefinition authType='EndUserTask' ...>
```

- **EndUserLibrary.** Allows access to the contents of a Library object.

To implement this AuthType, set the AuthType to EndUserLibrary and ensure the Library's MemberObjectGroup is All. (The EndUser capability (AdminGroup) has List and View access to Libraries whose authorization type is EndUserLibrary.)

Example: Using Authorization Types to Restrict Visibility on Resources

You can use authorization types to restrict visibility on resources on the resource level. Rather than move resources into special organizations, you can

- Define an authorization type for each resource (for example, Resource-Corporate-LDAP)
- Build capabilities with rights for those resource types

When assigning capabilities to users, do not assign a capability that includes rights to a generic resource type. Instead, assign users a capability with rights for a specific resource type.

Note – For an example of stock authorization types defined in the system, see the `admingroups.xml` file.

▼ To Define a Resource-Specific Authorization Type

- 1 **Add an entry to** `Configuration:AuthorizationTypes` **object.**

```
<AuthType name='Resource-Corporate-LDAP' extends='Resource'/>
```

- 2 Derive a variant of one of the standard capabilities, such as Resource Administrator. Note that the only difference between this capability and the standard AdminGroup is the type name in the Permission, which is Resource-Corporate-LDAP instead of Resource.**

```
<AdminGroup name='Corporate LDAP Resource Administrator'
  protected='true'
  displayName='UI_ADMINGROUP_RESOURCE_ADMIN'
  description='UI_ADMINGROUP_RESOURCE_ADMIN_DESCRIPTION'>
  <AdminGroups>
    <ObjectRef type='AdminGroup' id='#ID#Resource Group Administrator'/>
    <ObjectRef type='AdminGroup' id='#ID#Resource Report Administrator'/>
    <ObjectRef type='AdminGroup' id='#ID#Connect Organizations'/>
    <ObjectRef type='AdminGroup' id='#ID#Connect Policies'/>
  </AdminGroups>
  <Permissions>
    <Permission type='AttributeDefinition' rights='View'/>
    <Permission type='Resource-Corporate-LDAP' rights='View,List,Create,Modify,Delete,Execute'/>
    <Permission type='ResourceUIConfig' rights='Create,Modify'/>
    <Permission type='Rule' rights='View'/>
    <Permission type='User' rights='View,List'/>
  </Permissions>
  <MemberObjectGroups>
    <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#All' name='All'/>
  </MemberObjectGroups>
</AdminGroup>
<ObjectRef type='AdminGroup' id='#ID#Connect Resource Groups'/>
```

Example: Granting Access to a Specific Part of Identity Manager

You can also use authorization types to grant fine-grained administrative control of a very specific part of Identity Manager to a set of users.

You create an AuthType, assign objects to that AuthType, and then create a capability that grants that AuthType. When you assign this capability to a set of users, they can only see the area of the system that the authorization type and capability allow them to see.

The following example assigns the LimitedReportType authorization type to a TaskDefinition, and the Run Limited Report capability to a user. Consequently, that user can only execute reports where TaskDefinition is the LimitedReportType authorization type.

```
<AuthType name='LimitedReportType' extends='TaskDefinition'/>
<AuthType name='LimitedReportType' extends='TaskInstance'/>
<AdminGroup name='Run Limited Report' ...>
...
<Permissions type='LimitedReportType' rights='View,Execute'/>
```

```
...  
</AdminGroup>
```

Data Loading and Synchronization

This chapter presents an overview of the techniques that can be used to load and synchronize account information from a resource into Identity Manager.

It is important to clearly distinguish between Identity Manager users and resource accounts. The following definitions make it easier to understand the topic:

- **User.** A virtual identity that is managed by Identity Manager. An Identity Manager user may refer to any number of accounts.
- **Account.** A concrete identity that is managed by a resource (or, more precisely, by an external system or application that is represented as a Resource object in Identity Manager). For example, an entry in `/etc/passwd` on a UNIX system, an entry in the SAM database on a Windows system, and a UserProfile in RACF all represent accounts.
- **Administrator.** A person with responsibility for configuring and maintaining the Identity Manager system.

Identity Manager stores information about known resource accounts and users in the *account index*. At a minimum, each entry in the account index contains an account ID and an Identity Manager resource ID. An entry might also contain additional information, such as the native GUID or the status (enabled/disabled) of an account. An entry might also record the ID of an Identity Manager user as the owner of the account, or it might record a list of possible owners.

Topics discussed in this chapter include:

- “Types of Data Loading” on page 34
- “Load Operation Context” on page 39
- “Managing Reconciliation” on page 40
- “Managing Active Sync” on page 48

Types of Data Loading

Data loading is the process of importing account information from resources into Identity Manager and assigning these accounts to Identity Manager users. Identity Manager supports the following features that load account data from resources:

- **Discovery.** Provides basic functions that initially load resource accounts into Identity Manager.
- **Reconciliation.** Periodically loads resource account information into Identity Manager, taking action on each account according to configured policy.
- **Active Sync.** Allows information that is stored in an “authoritative” external resource (such as an application or database) to synchronize with Identity Manager user data. An Active Sync-enabled adapter “listens” or polls for changes to the authoritative resource.

Each of these concepts is discussed in detail. A table comparing the types of data loading can be found in *Summary of Data Loading Types*.

Discovery

The discovery processes are designed to be used when a resource is being deployed for the first time. They provide a means to load account information into Identity Manager quickly. As a result, they do not provide all the features found in reconciliation or Active Sync. For example, the discovery process does not add entries to the Account Index. Nor can you run workflows before or after discovery. However, the discovery processes allow you to determine more quickly whether correlation rules are working as expected.

When you begin a discovery process, Identity Manager determines whether an input account matches (or correlates with) an existing user. If it does, the discovery process merges the account into the user. The process will create a new Identity Manager user from any input account that does not match.

Identity Manager provides the following discovery functions:

- **Load From File.** Reads accounts listed in a file and loads them into Identity Manager.
- **Load From Resource.** Extracts accounts from a resource and loads them directly into Identity Manager.
- **Create Bulk Action.** Executes user creation commands listed in a file.

See the following sections for more information about these discovery processes.

Load from File

The Load from File discovery process reads account information that has been written into an XML or CSV (comma-separated values) file.

Some resources, such as Active Directory, have the ability to export native account information into a comma-separated values (CSV) format. These CSV files can be used to create Identity Manager accounts. See *Business Administrator's Guide* for more information about CSV formatting.

When you load from a file, you must specify which account correlation and confirmation rules to use. See *Correlation and Confirmation Rules* for more information.

Load from Resource

The Load from Resource feature scans a target system and returns information on all users. Identity Manager then creates and updates users. An adapter must have been configured for the resource before you can load from the resource.

When you load from a resource, you must specify which account correlation and confirmation rules to use. See *Correlation and Confirmation Rules* for more information.

Create Bulk Action

Bulk actions allow you to act on multiple accounts at the same time. You can use bulk actions to create, update, and delete Identity Manager and resource accounts, but this discussion will be limited to Identity Manager creating accounts. See *Business Administrator's Guide* for a full description of bulk actions.

Bulk actions are specified using comma-separated values (CSV). The structure of these values differs from those specified in a Load from File process.

The CSV format consists of two or more input lines. Each line consists of a list of values separated by commas. The first line contains field names. The remaining lines each correspond to an action to be performed on an Identity Manager user, the user's resource accounts, or both. Each line should contain the same number of values. Empty values will leave the corresponding field value unchanged.

Two fields are required in any bulk action CSV input:

- **user.** Contains the name of the Identity Manager user.
- **command.** Contains the action taken on the Identity Manager user. For creating Identity Manager users, this value must be Create.

The third and subsequent fields are from the User view. The field names used are the path expressions for the attributes in the views. See *Understanding the User View* in *Deployment Reference* for information on the attributes that are available in the User View. If you are using a customized User Form, then the field names in the form contain some of the path expressions that you can use.

Following is a list of some of the more common path expressions used in bulk actions:

- `waveset.roles`. A list of one or more role names to assign to the Identity Manager account.

- `waveset.resources`. A list of one or more resource names to assign to the Identity Manager account.
- `waveset.applications`. A list of one or more resource groups to assign to the Identity Manager account.
- `waveset.organization`. The organization name in which to place the Identity Manager account.
- `accounts[resource_name].attribute_name`. A resource account attribute. The names of the attributes are listed in the schema for the resource.

Some fields can have multiple values. For example, the `waveset.resources` field can be used to assign multiple resources to a user. You can use the vertical bar (`|`) character (also known as the “pipe” character), to separate multiple values in a field. The syntax for multiple values can be specified like this:

```
value0 | value1 [ | value2 ... ]
```

The following example illustrates Create bulk actions:

```
command,user,waveset.resources,password.password,password.confirmPassword,accounts[AD].description
,accounts[Solaris].comment
Create,John Doe,AD|Solaris,changeit,changeit,John Doe,John Doe
Create,Jane Smith,AD,changeit,changeit,Jane Smith,
```

The Create bulk action is more versatile than the from Load from File process. Bulk actions can work with multiple resources, while Load from File loads information from one resource at a time.

Reconciliation

Reconciliation compares the contents of the account index to what each resource currently contains. Reconciliation can perform the following functions:

- Detect new and deleted accounts
- Detect changes in account attribute values
- Correlate accounts with Identity Manager users
- Detect accounts that are not associated with Identity Manager users
- Run a workflow in response to each account situation that it detects
- Detect when a user has been moved from one container on a resource to another container on a resource

Note – An adapter must have been configured for the resource before you can reconcile. See [Resource Reference](#) for more information about adapters.

There are two types of reconciliation: full and incremental.

Full Reconciliation

Full reconciliation recalculates the existence, ownership, and situation for each account ID listed by the adapter. It examines each Identity Manager user that claims the resource to recalculate ownership.

An Identity Manager user can claim a resource by:

- Having a role that implies the resource
- Having a direct resource assignment
- Referring to an account on that resource
- Having a resource group

For each account, reconciliation process confirms that any Identity Manager owner recorded in the Account Index still exists and still claims the account. Any account that does not have an owner is correlated with Identity Manager users (as long as reconciliation policy for that resource specifies a correlation rule). If a correlation rule suggests one or more possible owners, then each of them will be double-checked in a confirmation rule (if one is specified). See [“Correlation and Confirmation Rules” on page 41](#) for more information about rules.

Once a situation has been determined for the account, reconciliation will perform any response that is configured in the reconciliation policy for that resource. If the reconciliation policy specifies a workflow to be performed per-account, full reconciliation will perform this for each account that is reconciled, after the situation action is performed. See [“Reconciliation Workflows” on page 44](#) for more information about workflows.

Incremental Reconciliation

Incremental reconciliation is analogous to incremental backup: it is faster than full reconciliation, and does most of what you need, but is not as complete as full reconciliation.

Incremental reconciliation trusts that the information maintained in the account index is correct. Trusting that the list of known account IDs is correct, and that ownership of the account by any Identity Manager owner is correctly recorded, allows incremental reconciliation to skip or shorten several processing phases.

Incremental reconciliation skips the step of examining Identity Manager users that claim the resource. Incremental reconciliation also calculates a situation only for accounts that have been added or deleted since the resource was last reconciled. It does this by comparing the list of account IDs in the account index for that resource to the list of account IDs returned by the

resource adapter. New accounts are recorded as existing, deleted accounts are recorded as no longer existing, and only these two sets of accounts are processed further.

Because incremental reconciliation is much faster and uses fewer processing cycles than full reconciliation, you may want to schedule incremental reconciliation more frequently and schedule full reconciliation less often.

Active Sync

Active Sync “listens” or polls for changes to a resource, detecting incremental changes in real time. Because Active Sync is designed to detect changes, it should not be used to load account information into Identity Manager for the first time. Instead, use reconciliation or a discovery process.

In general, you run reconciliation on an Active Sync resource in the following circumstances:

- To perform an initial load on the resource.
- To detect any attributes that have not been updated in Identity Manager because Active Sync has been configured to ignore or filter out the attributes.

Active Sync differs from reconciliation in the following ways:

- Active Sync allows an administrator to specify a user form that ensures attributes across multiple accounts are kept synchronized.
- A process rule can be implemented that fully controls all Active Sync processing. This is typically enabled when extraordinary actions need to be performed when an account on a resource changes, such as editing multiple objects in the repository.

Active Sync requires the use of an Active Sync-enabled adapter that has been properly configured. See *Business Administrator's Guide* for more information about configuring a resource to implement Active Sync.

Summary of Data Loading Types

The following table compares the capabilities of discovery and reconciliation.

TABLE 3-1 Summary of Data Loading Types

Function	Discovery	Reconciliation	Active Sync
Detect new accounts	Yes	Yes	Yes
Detect deleted accounts	No	Yes	Yes

TABLE 3-1 Summary of Data Loading Types (Continued)

Function	Discovery	Reconciliation	Active Sync
Detect changes in account attribute values	No	Yes	Yes
Detect accounts that are not associated with Identity Manager users	Yes	Yes	Yes
Detect when a user has been moved from one container on a resource to another container on a resource	No	Yes	Yes
Correlate accounts with Identity Manager users	Yes	Yes	Yes
Run a workflow in response to each account situation that it detects	No	Yes	Yes
Can be scheduled	No	Yes	Yes
Incremental mode	No	Yes	Not applicable
Add entries to the account index	No	Yes	Yes
Synchronize attributes on multiple resources	No	No	Yes

Load Operation Context

The following table provides information about the common Identity Manager processes or tasks related to the load operations category.

TABLE 3-2 Load Operations Processes/Tasks

Process or Task	How it is Used	Namespace
Load from File	Retrieves account information from a CVS or XML file (invoked through Administrator Interface). Identity Manager reads a <code>WSUser</code> object from a file, converts it to the User view, and applies the form. The attributes are processed as if they were extended attributes of the Identity Manager user. Attributes are put in <code>accounts[Lighthouse]</code> and will only be put under the <code>global</code> attribute if the form defines global fields for each of them.	All attribute values for each line in the file are pulled into the global namespace: <code>global.<attr name></code> Note: Applies to create operations only.
Load from Resource	Retrieves account information from a particular resource (invoked through Administrator Interface and uses an adapter to list and fetch accounts).	All attribute values for each account on the resource are pulled into the global namespace. <code>global.<LHS Attr Name></code> Note: Applies to create operations only.

TABLE 3-2 Load Operations Processes/Tasks (Continued)

Process or Task	How it is Used	Namespace
Bulk Operations	Retrieves commands and User view data from a CVS file (invoked through Administrator Interface). You can specify any attribute in the User view namespace. Attribute names are specified using the view path syntax. See “Understanding the User View” in <i>Sun Identity Manager Deployment Reference</i> for more information about the User view namespace and view path syntax	Attribute values from the file are pulled into the global namespace: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ accounts[*].* ■ waveset.* ■ accountInfo.* ■ global.* Note: There is no authorized session available.

Managing Reconciliation

The reconciliation process is primarily managed through the Administrator Interface. However, there are some aspects of reconciliation that cannot be accomplished from this interface. For example, you might need to create new correlation and confirmation rules, reconciliation workflows, or edit the Reconcile configuration object. The following sections describe these features, and others. For general information about defining reconciliation policy, see Business Administrator's Guide.

Reconciliation Policy

Reconciliation policies allow you to establish a set of responses, by resource, for each reconciliation task. Within a policy, you select the server to run reconciliation, determine how often and when reconciliation takes place, and set responses to each situation encountered during reconciliation. You can also configure reconciliation to detect changes made natively (not made through Identity Manager) to account attributes.

Each of these policy settings can be defined at several scopes:

- Globally (for all resource types)
- For a specific resource type
- For an individual resource instance

The value at each scope becomes the default for each sub-scope. Thus, reconciliation policy defines an *inheritance tree*:

- The global value becomes the default for every resource type.
- Each resource type can inherit the global value or specify a value.
- The resource type value is the default for every resource instance of that type.
- Each resource instance can inherit value of its parent resource type, or specify a value.

Inheritance makes it easier to manage policy for a large number of resources (especially if many of them will have the same settings).

For example, if you want to treat all resources in the same way, you need to manage only one set of policy settings, at the global level. If you want to treat all Windows resources one way and all Solaris resources another way, you need to manage policy settings at only two scopes: one for each of these two resource types. If there are exceptions to the policy defined at the resource type level for a few specific resource instances, the necessary policy settings can be overridden (specified) for those individual resources. Since each policy setting is inherited separately, only the settings that differ need to be specified; the other policy settings may still inherit their values from above.

Correlation and Confirmation Rules

Identity Manager matches resource accounts that are not linked to a user with Identity Manager users in two phases:

- **Correlation.** Finding potential owners
- **Confirmation.** Testing each potential owner

A *correlation rule* looks for Identity Manager users that might own an account. A *confirmation rule* tests an Identity Manager user against an account to determine whether the user actually does own the account. This two-stage approach allows Identity Manager to optimize correlation, by quickly finding possible owners (based on name or attributes), and by performing expensive checks only on the possible owners.

Reconciliation policy allows you to select a correlation rule and a confirmation rule for each resource. (You may also specify No Confirmation Rule.) The default correlation rule is to look for a user with a name that exactly matches the account ID of the input account. By default, no confirmation rule is used.

Note – Correlation and confirmation rules are also used for discovery and Active Sync.

Identity Manager predefines a number of correlation and confirmation rules in `sample/reconRules.xml`. You can also write your own correlation and confirmation rules. Any rule object with a subtype of `SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CORRELATION_RULE` or `SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CONFIRMATION_RULE` automatically appears in the appropriate Reconciliation Policy selection list.

Correlation Rules

A correlation rule can generate a list of user names based on values of the attributes of the resource account. A correlation rule may also generate a list of attribute conditions (referring to queryable attributes of a user object) that will be used to select users.

A correlation rule is run once for each unclaimed account.

Note – A correlation rule should be relatively “inexpensive” but as selective as possible. If possible, defer expensive processing to a confirmation rule.

Identity Manager predefines several correlation rules in `sample/reconRules.xml`:

- **User Name Matches AccountId.** Returns the value of the `accountId` attribute. It selects as a possible owner any Identity Manager user with a name that matches the resource account ID. This is the default correlation rule.
- **User Owns Matching AccountId.** Returns a list of attribute conditions. This will select as a possible owner any Identity Manager user that owns a resource account that matches the same `accountId` value.
- **User Email Matches Account Email.** Returns a list of attribute conditions that will select Identity Manager users based on the account's `email` attribute.

Input for any correlation rule is a map of the account attributes. Output must be one of:

- String (containing user name or ID)
- List of String elements (each a user name or ID)
- List of `WSAttribute` elements
- List of `AttributeCondition` elements

A more complicated rule might combine or manipulate account attribute values to generate a list of names or a list of attribute conditions.

Note – Attribute conditions must refer to queryable attributes, which are configured as `QueryableAttrNames` in the `UserUIConfig` object.

For example, `reconRules.xml` contains a fourth sample correlation rule, `User FullName Matches Account FullName`. XML comments disable this rule, because it will not work correctly without additional configuration. This rule looks for Identity Manager users based on `fullname`, but this attribute is not queryable by default.

Correlating on an extended attribute requires special configuration:

- The extended attribute must be specified as queryable in `UserUIConfig` (added to the list of `QueryableAttrNames`).
- The Identity Manager application (or the application server) may need to be restarted for the `UserUIConfig` change to take effect.

Confirmation Rules

A confirmation rule is run once for each matching user returned by the correlation rule.

A typical confirmation rule compares internal values from the user view to the values of account attributes. As an optional second stage in correlation processing, the confirmation rule performs checks that cannot be expressed in a correlation rule (or that are too expensive to evaluate in a correlation rule). In general, you need a confirmation rule only in the following circumstances:

- The correlation rule may return more than one matching user
- User values that must be compared are not queryable

Identity Manager predefines two confirmation rules in `sample/reconRules.xml`:

- **User Email Matches Account Email.** Returns a value of true if the user's email matches the account's email. This illustrates the fact that many ownership decisions could be expressed with either a correlation rule or a confirmation rule. However, since the `email` attribute of an Identity Manager user is automatically queryable, it would almost always be more efficient to express this as a correlation rule.
- **User First And Last Names Match Account.** Uses the XPRESS language to compare the user's first and last name to the same values of the account.

Inputs to any confirmation rule are:

- **userview.** Full view of an Identity Manager user.
- **account.** Map of resource account attributes.

A confirmation rule returns a string-form Boolean value of true if the user owns the account; otherwise, it returns a value of false.

The default confirmation rule is No Confirmation Rule. This assumes that the correlation rule is selective enough to find at most one user for each account. If the correlation rule selects more than one user, the account situation will be DISPUTED.

CorrelationPlan Objects

Correlation logic can indicate a resource account's type. During reconciliation, the automatic link must know about account type because no form is used to perform this action.

When reconciliation performs a LINK response for a resource account, it typically assigns the account to the user as the default account type. However, on a resource that is configured for multiple accounts per user, this may not always be appropriate. Specifically, discovered accounts can belong to a specific account type and should be linked to the user as such. To assign the appropriate account type, reconciliation must be informed of the account type to use. Identity Manager accomplishes by returning this information as part of the result of the correlation rule.

A CorrelationPlan object extends the result of a correlation rule to allow the account type to be identified. Therefore, a correlation rule must return a CorrelationPlan if the account is of a specific account type. However, a CorrelationPlan can also be used for standard resources as well. Unless specifically set, a CorrelationPlan indicates the default account type.

Refer to `sample/correlationRules.xml` and the Javadoc for examples and details on using a `CorrelationPlan` as the result of a correlation rule.

Reconciliation Workflows

You can extend typical reconciliation processing by exposing a number of attachment points for user-defined workflows.

If you are using expensive (that is, long running) per-account workflows, consider modifying your default workflow configuration as described in the *Configuring Workflow Properties* section of Deployment Reference.

Pre-Resource Workflow

A pre-resource workflow can be launched before any other reconciliation processing is started. The Notify Reconcile Start workflow is an example of a pre-resource workflow.

The Notify Reconcile Start workflow e-mails an administrator with notice that a reconcile has started for a resource. You must configure the Notify Reconcile Start e-mail template before running this workflow.

The following parameters are passed to the pre-resource workflow:

- **resourceName**. Name of the resource that will be reconciled.
- **resourceId**. Object ID of the resource that will be reconciled.

Per-Account Workflow

The per-account workflow is launched for each account processed by reconciliation, after the response (if any) has completed. The type of response and the response result do not affect this workflow.

The Notify Reconcile Response workflow is an example of a per-account workflow. It e-mails an administrator when the reconcile process attempts to automatically respond to a discovered situation. You must configure the Notify Reconcile Response e-mail template before running this workflow.

The following parameters are passed to the per-account workflow:

- **accountId**. Name of the resource account that was reconciled.
- **resourceId**. Object ID of the resource being reconciled.
- **resourceName**. Name of the resource being reconciled.
- **userId**. Object ID of the Identity Manager user identified as the account owner (by claim or correlation, depending on the situation). If no user is associated with the account, this is null.

- **userName.** Name of the Identity Manager user identified as the account owner (by claim or correlation, depending on the situation). If no user is associated with the account, this is null.
- **initialSituation.** The situation that was initially discovered for the account, triggering the response. The value is a valid message key.
- **responseSuccess.** Boolean value indicating whether the response completed successfully. If no response was performed, this is null.
- **finalSituation.** Reconciliation situation the account was in after applying the response. If the account no longer exists and Identity Manager contains no references to it, this is null.

Post-Resource Workflow

A post-resource workflow can be launched after all other reconciliation processing is complete. The Notify Reconcile Finish workflow is an example post-resource workflow.

The Notify Reconcile Finish workflow e-mails an administrator with notice that a reconcile has finished for a resource. You must configure the Notify Reconcile Finish e-mail template before running this workflow.

The following parameters are passed into the post-resource workflow:

- **resourceName.** Name of the resource that was reconciled.
- **resourceId.** Object ID of the resource just reconciled.

Auditing Native Changes

The Audit Native Change To Account Attributes workflow is launched when reconciliation or the provisioner detects a change to the attributes of a resource account that was not initiated through Identity Manager. Only user-specified attributes are monitored for changes. By default, no attributes are monitored.

The following parameters are passed to the workflow:

- **resource.** Resource object where the account was changed natively.
- **accountID.** Name of the resource account that was changed natively.
- **prevAttributes.** Map containing the monitored resource account attributes recorded by Identity Manager.
- **newAttributes.** Map containing the monitored resource account attributes currently set on the resource.
- **attributeChanges.** Map containing the List of generic objects that indicate which attributes have changed. Each object contains the previous and new values.
- **formattedChanges.** String representing the attribute changes in compact format, suitable for an audit record.

To audit native changes, you must do the following:

- On the **Edit Reconciliation Policy** page, select the **Detect native changes to account attributes** option from the **Attribute-level reconciliation** drop-down menu. You might need to uncheck the **Inherit resource type policy** check box to display a list of attributes. Select the attributes to audit.
- Add **Changes Outside Identity Manager** to the list of audit events. To do this, select the **Configure** tab, then **Audit Events** on the left.

Resource Scheduling

Reconciliation maintains two separate schedules for each resource: one for incremental reconciliation, and another for full reconciliation.

Each resource is scheduled by a separate “requester” task. Configuring a reconciliation schedule for a resource in the reconciliation policy GUI configures the TaskSchedule for the requester task. This allows reconciliation to be controlled by an external task scheduler, if desired. It also minimizes the overhead of the reconciliation task. A reconciliation daemon that is not doing anything consumes very few resources, since it periodically polls an in-memory queue (rather than querying the database for resources that are ready to reconcile).

Reconciliation accesses each resource through a resource adapter. Reconciliation calls the adapter *directly* to list accounts, iterate accounts, or fetch an individual resource account. Reconciliation also accesses resources *indirectly* through Provisioner, and uses Provisioner to create a resource account or Identity Manager user from a resource account.

Reconciliation and Provisioner both maintain the account index. Also, reconciling a resource prunes the Account Index each time. The reconciliation task automatically removes any entry for an account that no longer exists on the resource, unless that account is owned by an Identity Manager user. Therefore, it should not be necessary to attempt to manually clear the Account Index for a resource.

Each Identity Manager server runs reconciliation as a daemon task. This means that the Identity Manager scheduler starts the reconciliation task immediately and automatically restarts the task if it dies.

Note – Resource reconciliation is not automatically restarted. The ReconTask daemon itself is automatically restarted, which enables it to respond to any new request; but any request in process when the host server dies (or when the application server is shut down) is lost. The daemon does not restart resource reconciliation because it may be inappropriate to reconcile the resource at a time other than when requested.

Reconcile Configuration Object

The ReconcileConfiguration object contains several attributes that cannot be edited from the Edit Reconciliation Policy page.

The following table defines the reconciliation attributes. Use the debug pages to edit the attribute values in the ReconcileConfiguration object (#ID#Configuration:ReconcileConfiguration)

TABLE 3-3 Primary Attributes of ReconcileConfiguration Object

Attribute	Description
fetchTimeout	The number of milliseconds the reconciliation process should wait for a response from a resource when fetching an account. The default value is 1 minute (60000 milliseconds).
listTimeout	The number of milliseconds the reconciliation process should wait for a response from a resource when listing accounts. The default value is 10 minutes (600000 milliseconds).
maxConcurrentResources	The maximum number of resources that a server should reconcile concurrently. The default value is 3.
maxQueueSize	The maximum number of entries in a reconciliation server's work queue. The default value is 1000.

The following example shows the default values for the ReconcileConfiguration object.

EXAMPLE 3-1 Default Values for the ReconcileConfiguration Object

```
<Configuration id='#ID#Configuration:ReconcileConfiguration' name='Reconcile Configuration'>
  <Extension>
    <Object>
      <Attribute name='listTimeout' value='600000' />
      <Attribute name='fetchTimeout' value='60000' />
      <Attribute name='maxConcurrentResources' value='3' />
      <Attribute name='maxQueueSize' value='1000' />
    </Object>
  </Extension>
  <MemberObjectGroups>
    <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#All' name='All' />
  </MemberObjectGroups>
</Configuration>
```

Managing Active Sync

Active Sync-enabled adapters can be managed in the Administrator Interface. This interface contains a wizard that allows an administrator to fully configure most aspects of Active Sync on a single adapter. The wizard also allows the administrator to construct a resource, or input, form, without using the Sun Identity Manager Integrated Development Environment. For more details about the Active Sync wizard, see *Business Administrator's Guide*.

How Active Sync-Enabled Adapters Work

This section describes:

- Overview of the basic steps of adapter processing
- Active Sync variable context
- Using rules
- Using forms
- Launching workflow processes

Basic Steps of Adapter Processing

All Active Sync-enabled adapters follow the following basic steps when listening or polling for changes to the resource defined in Identity Manager. When the adapter detects that a resource has changed, the Active Sync-enabled adapter:

1. Extracts the changed information from the resource.
2. Determines which Identity Manager object is affected.
3. Builds a map of user attributes to pass to the system, along with a reference to the adapter and a map of any additional options, which creates an Identity Application Programming Interface (IAPI) object.
4. Submits the IAPI object to the ActiveSync Manager.
5. ActiveSync Manager processes the object and returns to the adapter a `WavesetResult` object that informs the Active Sync-enabled adapter if the operation succeeds. This object can contain many results from the various steps that the Identity Manager system uses to update the identity. Typically, a workflow also handles errors within Identity Manager, often ending up as an Approval for a managing administrator.

Active Sync Namespace

The following table provides information about the common Identity Manager processes or tasks related to the Active Sync category.

Process or Task Running	How it is Used	Namespace
ActiveSync IAPIUser	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Processes user-related changes on a particular resource. ■ Performs actions directly on the full User view before launching the designated workflow process. 	<p>Merges attributes from the ActiveSync event into the User view.</p> <p>Typical attributes on the Input Form include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ accounts[*].* ■ waveset.* ■ accountInfo.* ■ activeSync.<LHS Attr Name> ■ activeSync.resourceName ■ activeSync.resourceId ■ activeSync.resource ■ display.session (session for Proxy Admin) ■ global.<LHS Attr Name> (if set global flag is set on resource)
ActiveSync IAPIProcess	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Processes generic events on a resource by creating a Process view. ■ Top-level fields in Process view are arbitrary inputs to the task. ■ Collects attributes related to launching the task under the global attribute. ■ Writes the workflow to retrieve inputs from under global rather than as top-level attributes. 	<p>Launches the specified task with ActiveSync poll attributes dumped into top-level workflow global attribute.</p> <p>Workflow attributes assume the form:global.<LHS Attr Name></p>

Using Rules

When the Active Sync-enabled adapter detects a change to an account on a resource, it either maps the incoming attributes to an Identity Manager user, or creates an Identity Manager user account if none can be matched and if the Active Sync resource has been configured to do so.

The Active Sync wizard allows you to specify rules to control what happens when various conditions occur. The following table describes each type of rule.

TABLE 3-4 Rule Types

Parameter	Description
Process Rule	<p>Either the name of a <code>TaskDefinition</code>, or a rule that returns the name of a <code>TaskDefinition</code>, to run for every record in the feed. The process rule gets the resource account attributes in the <code>activeSync</code> namespace, as well as the resource ID and name.</p> <p>A process rule controls all functionality that occurs when the system detects any change on the resource. It is used when full control of the account processing is required. As a result, a process rule overrides all other rules.</p> <p>If a process rule is specified, the process will be run for every row regardless of any other settings on this adapter.</p> <p>At minimum, a process rule must perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Query for a matching <code>User</code> view. <li>■ If the <code>User</code> exists, checkout the view. If not, create the <code>User</code>. <li>■ Update or populate the view. <li>■ Checkin the <code>User</code> view. It is possible to synchronize objects other than <code>User</code>, such as LDAP Roles.
Correlation Rule	<p>If no Identity Manager user's resource info is determined to own the resource account, Identity Manager invokes the Correlation Rule to determine a list of potentially matching users/accountIDs or Attribute Conditions, used to match the user, based on the resource account attributes (in the account namespace).</p> <p>The rule returns one of the following pieces of information that can be used to correlate the entry with an existing Identity Manager account:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Identity Manager user name <li>■ <code>WSAttributes</code> object (used for attribute-based search) <li>■ List of items of type <code>AttributeCondition</code> or <code>WSAttribute</code> (AND-ed attribute-based search) <li>■ List of items of type <code>String</code> (each item is the Identity Manager ID or the user name of an Identity Manager account) <p>If more than one Identity Manager account can be identified by the correlation rule, you need a confirmation rule or resolve process rule to handle the matches.</p> <p>For the Database Table, Flat File, and PeopleSoft Component Active Sync adapters, the default correlation rule is inherited from the reconciliation policy on the resource.</p> <p>The same correlation rule can be used for reconciliation and Active Sync. See <i>Correlation and Confirmation Rules</i> for more information.</p>

TABLE 3-4 Rule Types (Continued)

Parameter	Description
Confirmation Rule	<p>Rule that is evaluated for all users that are returned by a correlation rule. For each user, the full User view of the correlation Identity Manager identity and the resource account information (placed under the “account .” namespace) are passed to the confirmation rule. The confirmation rule is then expected to return a value that can be expressed like a Boolean value. For example, “true” or “1” or “yes” and “false” or “0” or null.</p> <p>For the Database Table, Flat File, and PeopleSoft Component Active Sync adapters, the default confirmation rule is inherited from the reconciliation policy on the resource.</p> <p>The same confirmation rule can be used for reconciliation and Active Sync. See <i>Correlation and Confirmation Rules</i> for more information.</p>
Delete Rule	<p>A rule that can expect a map of all values with keys of the form <code>activeSync .</code> or <code>account .</code> A LighthouseContext object (<code>display . session</code>) based on the proxy administrator’s session is made available to the context of the rule. The rule is then expected to return a value that can be expressed like a Boolean value. For example, “true” or “1” or “yes” and “false” or “0” or null.</p> <p>If the rule returns true for an entry, the account deletion request will be processed through forms and workflow, depending on how the adapter is configured.</p>
Resolve Process Rule	<p>Either the name of the <code>TaskDefinition</code> or a rule that returns the name of a <code>TaskDefinition</code> to run in case of multiple matches to a record in the feed. The Resolve Process rule gets the resource account attributes as well as the resource ID and name.</p> <p>This rule is also needed if there were no matches and Create Unmatched Accounts is not selected.</p> <p>This workflow could be a process that prompts an administrator for manual action.</p>
Create Unmatched Accounts	<p>If set to true, creates an account on the resource when no matching Identity Manager user is found. If false, Identity Manager does not create the account unless the process rule is set and the workflow it identifies determines that a new account is warranted. The default is true.</p>
Populate Global	<p>If set to true, populates the global namespace in addition to the <code>activeSync</code> namespace. The default value is false.</p>

If the Adapter Does Not Find the User

If Identity Manager cannot find a match with an existing Identity Manager user, it turns an update operation into a create operation if the **Create Unmatched Accounts** setting is true, or the `Resolve Process` workflow indicates a `feedOp` of `create`.

The `feedOp` field is available to forms that contain logic to create, delete, or update users. You can use this field to disable or enable fields that are specific to one kind of event (for example, the generation of a password when the `feedOp` field is set to `create`).

This example `feedOp` field creates a password only when the Active Sync-enabled adapter detects a user on the resource that is not matched by a user in Identity Manager, and creates the user in Identity Manager.

EXAMPLE 3-2 Example feedOp Field

```
<Field name='waveset.password'>
  <Disable>
    <neq>
      <ref>feedOp</ref>
      <s>create</s>
    </neq>
  </Disable>
  <expression>
    <cond>
      <notnull>
        <ref>activeSync.password</ref>
      </notnull>
      <ref>activeSync.password</ref>
      <s>change12345</s>
    </cond>
  </expression>
</Field>
```

Using Forms

Active Sync-enabled adapters typically use two types of forms during processing: a *resource form* and a *user form*.

Form processing occurs in three steps:

1. Active Sync fields are filled in with attribute and resource information. Use the `activeSync` namespace to retrieve and set attributes on the resource.
2. The resource form is expanded and derived. During this expansion, all user view attributes are available.
3. The user form is expanded and derived.

The `$WSHOME/sample/forms` directory provides sample forms that end with `ActiveSyncForm.xml`. They include logic for handling the cases of new and existing users, as well as logic for disabling or deleting the Identity Manager user when a deletion is detected on the resource.

Note – Place only resource-specific logic in the resource form and include common logic in the user form, possibly enabled when the `feedop` field is not null. If the resource form is set to none, all of the Active Sync attributes (except `accountId`) are named global and will propagate automatically.

Resource Form

The *resource form* is the form that the administrator selects from a pull-down menu when the resource is created or edited. A reference to a selected form is stored in the resource object.

Resource forms are used with Active Sync-enabled adapters in the following ways:

- Translate incoming attributes from the schema map.
- Generate fields such as password, role, and organization.
- Provide simple control logic for custom processing, including logic for handling the cases of new and existing users, as well as logic for disabling or deleting the Identity Manager user when a deletion has been detected.
- Copy and optionally transform attributes from `activeSync` to fields that the user form takes as inputs. The required fields for a creation operation are `waveset.accountId` and `waveset.password`. Other field can be set, too, (for example, `accounts[AD].email` or `waveset.resources`).
- Cancel the processing of the user by setting `IAPI.cancel` to true. This is often used to ignore updates to certain users.

The following example shows a simple field that will ignore all users with the last name Doe.

EXAMPLE 3-3 Field Ignores All Users with Last Name Doe

```
<Field name='IAPI.cancel'>
  <Disable>
    <neq>
      <ref>activeSync.lastName</ref>
      <s>Doe</s>
    </neq>
  </Disable>
  <expression>
    <s>true</s>
  </expression>
</Field>
```

Resource forms include logic for handling the cases of new and existing users, as well as logic for disabling or deleting the Identity Manager user when a deletion has been detected.

User Form

The *user form* is used for editing from the Identity Manager interface. You assign it by assigning a *proxy administrator* to the adapter. If the proxy administrator has a user form associated with him, this form is applied to the user view at processing time.

Proxy Administrator and the User Form

You set a proxy administrator for an adapter through the `ProxyAdministrator` attribute, which you can set to any Identity Manager administrator. All Active Sync-enabled adapter operations are performed as though the Proxy Administrator was performing them. If no proxy administrator is assigned, the default user form is specified.

Alternative Form to Process Attributes

Best practice suggests keeping common changes, such as deriving a fullname from the first and last name, in the *user form*. The *resource form* should contain resource-specific changes, such as disabling the user when their HR status changes. However, you can alternatively place it in an included form after the desired attributes are placed in a common path, such as `incoming`.

```
<Form>
  <Field name='incoming.lastname'>
    <ref>activeSync.lastname</ref>
  </Field>
  <Field name='incoming.firstname'>
    <ref>activeSync.firstname</ref>
  </Field>
</Form>
```

Subsequently, in the common form, reference `incoming.xxx` for the common logic:

```
<Form>
  <Field name='fullname'>
    <concat>
      <ref>incoming.firstname</ref>
      <s> </s>
      <ref>incoming.lastname</ref>
    </concat>
  </Field>
</Form>
```

Process Cancel Action

To cancel the processing of a user, set `IAPI.cancel` to true in the resource form. You can use this to ignore updates to certain users.

Note – If `IAPI.cancel` is set to a value of true in an Active Sync form, then the process associated with an `IAPIUser` or `IAPIProcess` event will not be launched.

The following example shows a simple field in the resource form that ignores all users with the last name *Doe*.

```

<Field name='IAPI.cancel'>
  <Disable>
    <eq><ref>activeSync.lastName</ref><s>Doe</s></eq>
  </Disable>
  <Expansion>
    <s>true</s>
  </Expansion>
</Field>

```

Launching Workflow Processes

The Active Sync wizard allows an administrator to specify a pre-poll and post-poll workflow. These workflows are similar in concept to the workflows discussed in *Reconciliation Workflows*.

Some Active Sync-enabled adapters support a resource attribute that runs a specified workflow instead of checking the pulled changes into the user view. This workflow is run with an input variable of only the Active Sync data. For adapters that do not support a separate process, or one where you want to use the standard user form and then launch a process, you can override the process by setting options.

```

<Form>
  <Field name='sourceOptions.Process'>
    <Expansion>
      <s>My workflow process name</s>
    </Expansion>
  </Field>
</Form>

```

The workflow specified through the form is called just like a standard provisioning workflow. Sun strongly recommends that you base your custom workflow on the standard create and update workflow. Consult the create and update user workflows in `workflow.xml`.

Example: Disabling Accounts through Active Sync-Enabled Adapters

In this example, the resource (an HR database) can be updated with an employee's current status at the company. Based on the input from this HR database, the Active Sync-enabled adapter can disable, delete, create, or perform other actions on the user's accounts across the enterprise by updating the Identity Manager repository.

The following code example disables all accounts for an employee if there is an incoming attribute called Status and it is not active ("A"). The following table identifies the four states of this attribute.

TABLE 3-5 Attribute States

State	Description
A	active
T	terminated
L	laid off
S	pending change

Based on the value of the Status attribute, the account can be disabled or enabled.

EXAMPLE 3-4 Disabling Accounts for Incoming, Inactive Status Attribute

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Configuration wstype='UserForm' name='PeopleSoft ActiveSync Form'>
  <Extension>
    <Form>
<!-- this is a sample of how to map the accountID to a different field than the
one from the schema map
Commented out because we want to use the default account ID mapped from the resource
Schema Map.
<Field name='waveset.accountId'>
  <Disable>
    <neq>
      <ref>feedOp</ref>
      <s>create</s>
    </neq>
  </Disable>
  <Expansion>
    <concat>
      <s>ps</s>
      <ref>waveset.accountId</ref>
    </concat>
  </Expansion>
</Field> -->

<!-- this is the real one, limited to create -->
<Field name='waveset.accountId'>
  <Disable>
    <neq>
      <ref>feedOp</ref>
      <s>create</s>
    </neq>
  </Disable>
  <Expansion>
```

EXAMPLE 3-4 Disabling Accounts for Incoming, Inactive Status Attribute (Continued)

```

        <ref>activeSync.EMPLID</ref>
    </Expansion>
</Field>

<!-- we need to make up a password for accounts that are being created. This picks
the last six digits of the SSN. -->
<Field name='waveset.password'>
    <Disable>
        <neq>
            <ref>feedOp</ref>
            <s>create</s>
        </neq>
    </Disable>
    <expression>
        <s>change123456</s>
    </expression>
</Field>

<Field name='waveset.resources'>
<!-- <Disable><neq><ref>feedOp</ref><s>create</s></neq></Disable> -->
<!-- Don't change the resources list if it already contains peoplesoft -->
    <Disable>
        <member>
            <ref>activeSync.resourceName</ref>
            <ref>waveset.resources</ref>
        </member>
    </Disable>
    <expression>
        <appendAll>
            <ref>waveset.resources</ref>
            <ref>activeSync.resourceName</ref>
        </appendAll>
    </expression>
</Field>

<!-- Status is mapped by the schema map to PS_JOB.EMPL_STATUS which has at least
four states -
A for active,
T terminated,
L laid off, and
S which is a pending change.
The audit data tells us what the state was, and the global data tells us what
it is. Based on the change we can disable or enable the account Note that this
can happen on a create also! -->

<Field>

```

EXAMPLE 3-4 Disabling Accounts for Incoming, Inactive Status Attribute (Continued)

```

<Disable>
  <eq>
    <ref>activeSync.Status</ref>
    <s>A</s>
  </eq>
</Disable>
<Field name='waveset.disabled'>
  <Expansion>
    <s>true</s>
  </Expansion>
</Field>
<FieldLoop for='name' in='waveset.accounts[*].name'>
  <Field name='accounts[$(name)].disable'>
    <expression>
      <s>true</s>
    </expression>
  </Field>
</FieldLoop>
</Field>

<!-- Status is mapped by the schema map to PS_JOB.EMPL_STATUS which has at least
four states -
A for active,
T terminated,
L laid off, and
S which is a pending change.
This is the enable logic. It is disabled if the account status is <> A or is
already enabled -->

<Field>
  <Disable>
    <neq>
      <ref>activeSync.Status</ref>
      <s>A</s>
    </neq>
  </Disable>
  <Field name='waveset.disabled'>
    <Disable>
      <eq>
        <ref>waveset.disabled</ref>
        <s>false</s>
      </eq>
    </Disable>
    <Expansion>
      <s>false</s>
    </Expansion>
  </Field>
</Field>

```

EXAMPLE 3-4 Disabling Accounts for Incoming, Inactive Status Attribute *(Continued)*

```
</Field>
<FieldLoop for='name' in='waveset.accounts[*].name'>
  <Field name='accounts[$(name)].disable'>
    <Expansion>
      <s>false</s>
    </Expansion>
  </Field>
</FieldLoop>
</Field>
</Form>
</Extension>
<MemberObjectGroups>
<ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#Top' name='Top' />
</MemberObjectGroups>
</Configuration>
```


Dataloading Scenario

This chapter provides tips to consider when preparing to load account information into Identity Manager. It also includes sample scenarios that illustrate some issues that you might encounter.

Assessing Your Environment

Before you can begin loading user account information into Identity Manager, you determine which know the following questions applies to your environment:

- Is there an authoritative resource for all user IDs?
If yes, then loading user accounts into Identity Manager should be straightforward. Use that resource as your first resource, then load accounts from other resources, using correlation rules to link the accounts together.
- Can a complete list of users be obtained from resources that overlap, but for which there is a correlation key?
If yes, then the process of loading user accounts will be similar. Be sure that the user accounts are loaded from the overlapping resources into Identity Manager before loading accounts from other resources.
- Can a list of users be obtained from overlapping resources that do not have a correlation key?
If yes, then determine how a unique set of users can be discovered from those resources most easily. You will probably need to manually correlate and delete users for each resource.

If the answer is no to all these questions, then the process of loading accounts is problematic. Load user accounts as best you can, and plan to delegate creation of other Identity Manager users to departmental administrators or end-users.

Choosing the First Resource

Ideally, the first resource you use to load accounts into Identity Manager has the following characteristics:

- **References a comprehensive set of users.** The goal of an initial load is get as many accounts into Identity Manager as possible. Thus, the following applications might be a good choice:
 - A Human Resources application, such as PeopleSoft or SAP. (If the application does not contain contractors and other temporary workers, be sure to load those accounts separately.)
 - A directory-based application, such as LDAP or Active Directory. A majority of users are often defined in a central organization or organization unit.
- **Contains enough information to construct an Identity Manager account ID.** Each Identity Manager account ID must be unique. Ideally, your resource will have an attribute that is guaranteed to be unique and can be used as a Identity Manager account ID. Examples include an employee IDs or Active Directory sAMAccountName attributes. First and last names can also be concatenated to produce an account ID, but this technique might not guarantee a unique Identity Manager account will be generated.

Note – The Lighthouse account is now called the *Identity Manager* account. You can override this name change through the use of a custom catalog.

See [Chapter 11, “Enabling Internationalization,”](#) for information about custom catalogs.

- **Stores user attributes that can be used correlation keys.** To link resource accounts in Identity Manager, you must have attributes that have the same values across two or more resources. Ideally, the values on the secondary resources will always perfectly match values on the first resource. In addition, it would be ideal if the values on the secondary resource are unique within that resource. The best attributes include employee ID and full name, but any other attribute that is present and consistent across multiple resources is acceptable.
- **Contains data that can be considered authoritative.** If users can edit their own account data, then the data might not be consistent across systems.

The following diagram illustrates a small scenario in which a company has three types of resources. Most of the company’s workers are defined in a Human Resources application, such as PeopleSoft or SAP. However, the company does not enter contractors in the HR application, so the contractors cannot be loaded into Identity Manager using this application. The Active Directory also defines most, but not all, users. (These users might be factory workers with no need for computer access.) Thus, the majority of users are defined in both resources, but neither contains all the users. Some workers also have UNIX accounts.

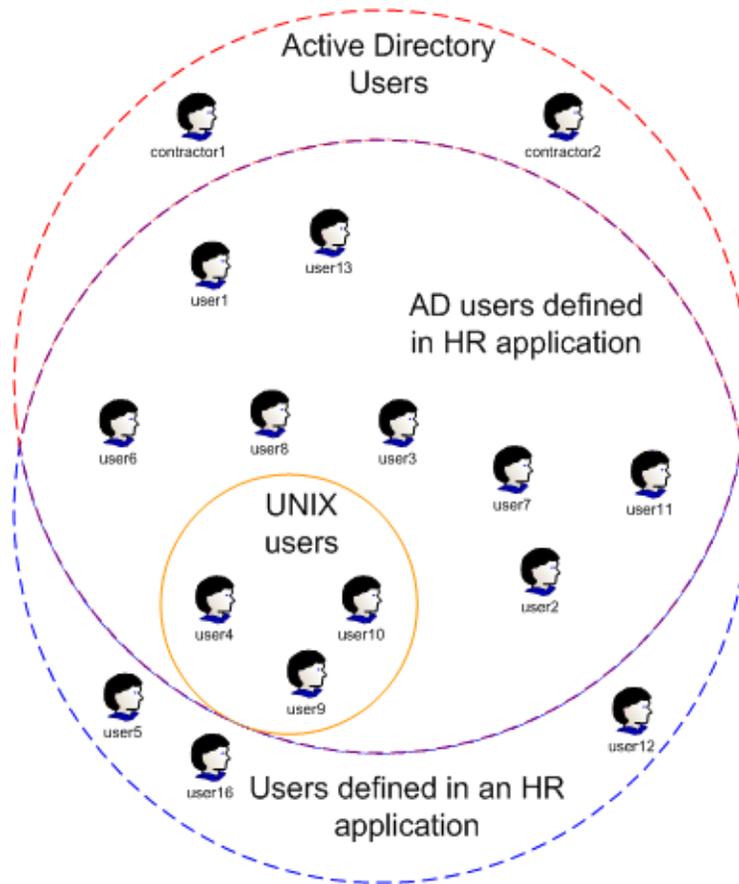


FIGURE 4-1 Small Dataloading Scenario

Which resource should be selected as the first resource? The UNIX resource can be safely eliminated, because it does not contain a comprehensive set of users. Active Directory and the HR application contain about the same number of users, so neither has a clear advantage.

Factors that can help determine whether the Active Directory or HR application should be loaded first include the following:

- Urgency to manage accounts within Identity Manager. If the workers not defined in Active Directory (that is, they are defined in the HR application only) do not have any additional resource accounts, such as UNIX or other systems, then the HR application might not be as crucial as the Active Directory resource.
- Correlation keys. If one resource has attributes that are also on the UNIX accounts, then that attribute might be a better choice.

- Identity Manager login names. If one resource creates a more desirable login name of Identity Manager, then this can be a deciding factor.

Choosing the First Data Loading Process

After you have chosen which resource will be used as the starting point for loading user data into Identity Manager, you must decide which process to use. The following table provides a summary of the benefits and drawbacks of each data loading process. A discussion of each data loading process follows.

TABLE 4-1 Overview of Data Loading Processes

Data Loading Process	Advantages	Disadvantages
Load from File	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Quickest loading process. ▪ Easy to control which attributes are loaded. ▪ Easier to configure and faster than reconciliation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Requires customer time to generate a CSV file from a resource. ▪ Requires a full reconciliation before production. ▪ Cannot be used to update accounts.
Load from Resource	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Works with all resources. ▪ Easier to configure than reconciliation. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cannot pick and choose which resource accounts will be loaded. ▪ Requires a full reconciliation before production.
Create bulk action	Allows you to add multiple accounts simultaneously to an Identity Manager user.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Slower than loading from resource or reconciliation. ▪ Cannot easily generate the CSV file from resources. ▪ Requires detailed knowledge of Identity Manager to make full use of this feature. ▪ Requires a full reconciliation before production.
Reconciliation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Can implement all aspects of reconciliation policy. ▪ Using reconciliation up-front prevents last-minute surprises. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cannot pick and choose which resource accounts will be loaded. ▪ Can take a large amount of time to load all accounts in large environments (over 50,000 employees).
ActiveSync	If at all possible, avoid choosing ActiveSync as the means to load account information. ActiveSync is designed to detect changes, and as a result, initial loads are slow.	

Using Load from File

The Load from File process seeds Identity Manager accounts with basic values, such as account ID, first and last name, and e-mail address. The account ID is the only required attribute.

The Load from File process imports the contents of a comma-separated values (CSV) file into Identity Manager. The top line of this file contains a list of attribute names, separated by commas. Each subsequent line contains a series of corresponding attribute values. All attributes must also be separated by commas.

Note – .Load from File also accepts XML files, but the syntax of an XML file must match the syntax generated by the Extract to File feature. This format is beyond the scope of this discussion.

Load from File also accepts XML files, but the syntax of an XML file must match the syntax generated by the Extract to File feature. This format is beyond the scope of this discussion.

The data in a CSV file is often exported from a resource. For example, the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC (Microsoft Management Console) allows you to export the contents of an organization unit directly into a CSV file. The console exports all users defined in the organization unit as well as the displayed attributes. Therefore, you should verify only attributes that will be managed by Identity Manager are displayed in the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC. Including extraneous attributes will cause loading times to increase.

Some resources are not capable of directly exporting user account information to CSV format. If you wish to use to this method of data loading, you might need to extract the information programmatically or add data manually.

For example, the first three lines of a CSV file might look like this:

```
accountId,firstname,lastname,EmployeeID
Josie.Smith,Josie,Smith,1436
AJ.Harris,Anthony,Harris,c310
```

The attributes listed in the CSV file must be pre-defined as user view attributes. Basic attributes such as `accountId`, `email`, `password`, and `confirmpassword` are pre-defined. Others are defined in the extended user attributes configuration object. By default, this object adds `firstname`, `lastname`, and `fullname` to the list of available attributes.

If you want to retain values for attributes that are not pre-defined in Identity Manager, such as an employee ID, you must add them to the Extended User Attributes Configuration object.

The Load from File process configuration page prompts for a correlation and confirmation rules. Since this is the first attempt to load data, select the *User Name Matches AccountId* correlation rule. You do not need a confirmation rule.

It is important to remember that the data contained in the CSV file is used for Identity Manager accounts only. Even if the data is exported directly from Active Directory, for example, the data is not linked to any Active Directory accounts or resources unless you have created a custom user form to do this. Without a custom user form, a different data loading mechanism must be used to link resource account data to an Identity Manager user. User forms are discussed briefly in [“Assigning User Forms” on page 70](#).

Note – .The Load from File process does not add entries into the Identity Manager account index. Therefore, you must perform a full reconciliation, or update the users, before your Identity Manager deployment is complete. In addition, the Load from File does not run any workflows when creating users in Identity Manager.

The Load from File process does not add entries into the Identity Manager account index. Therefore, you must perform a full reconciliation, or update the users, before your Identity Manager deployment is complete. In addition, the Load from File does not run any workflows when creating users in Identity Manager.

Using Load from Resource

Although the configuration pages for the Load from Resource and Load from File processes are almost identical, the Load from Resource is functionally closer to reconciliation. The Load from Resource and reconciliation processes pull data from the resource, and then adds the accounts it finds to Identity Manager. Therefore, the adapter must be configured before you perform either of these operations.

Load from Resource is faster on the initial run than reconcile but does not populate the Account Index. Reconcile on the second execution running in Incremental mode should be faster than Load from Resource. If reconciliation is the desired tool as the long-term solution, then use reconciliation for the initial load of users.

A user form can be used to set the account ID, place users in an Organizations, and perform other related tasks related to creating users. See [“Assigning User Forms” on page 70](#) for more information.

When you seed Identity Manager accounts for the first resource using Load from Resource, the correlation and confirmation rules are not very meaningful. Select the **User Name Matches AccountId** correlations rule. You do not need a confirmation rule.

Note – The Load from Resource process does not add entries into the Identity Manager account index. Therefore, you must perform a full reconciliation, or update the users, before your Identity Manager deployment is complete. In addition, the Load from File does not run any workflows when creating users in Identity Manager.

Using Create Bulk Actions

The Create bulk action loads data from a CSV file. Unlike the Load from File process, the create bulk action allows you to define any writable attribute in the user view, including Identity Manager-specific attributes, global attributes, and resource account attributes. This flexibility means that it will probably be more difficult to assemble a bulk actions CSV file. If your bulk actions affect multiple resources, you will need to find a way to merge resource data into a single CSV file. However, you could also define a simpler bulk action file and use subsequent update actions to load data into Identity Manager user accounts.

Bulk actions runs the default workflows for create, update, and delete actions. This slows down the process of loading user accounts, but add greater flexibility.

The following example illustrates the use of Create bulk actions only. The command and user attributes are required.

```
command,user,waveset.resources,password.password,password.confirmPassword,
accounts[MyAD].description,accounts[MySolaris].comment
```

```
Create,John Doe,MyAD|MySolaris,changeit,changeit,John Doe,John Doe
Create,Jane Smith,MyAD,changeit,changeit,Jane Smith
```

The following example illustrates how the Create and Update bulk actions can be used in two separate files.

```
command,user,waveset.resources,password.password,password.confirmPassword,
accounts[MyAD].description,
Create,John Doe,MyAD,changeit,changeit,John Doe,John Doe
Create,Jane Smith,MyAD,changeit,changeit,
Jane Smith
```

```
command,user,waveset.resources,password.password,password.confirmPassword,
accounts[MySolaris].comment
Update,John Doe,MySolaris,changeit,changeit,John Doe
Update,Jane Smith,MySolaris,changeit,changeit,Jane Smith
```

Creating accounts using bulk actions does not add entries into the Identity Manager account index. Therefore, you must perform a full reconciliation before your Identity Manager deployment is complete.

Note – . Creating accounts using bulk actions does not add entries into the Identity Manager account index. Therefore, you must perform a full reconciliation before your Identity Manager deployment is complete.

Using Reconciliation

The first reconciliation of a resource will probably take longer than any subsequent reconciliation. You can expect the first reconciliation of a resource to add a large number of Account Index entries.

Preparing for Data Loading

Review the following sections before you begin the process of loading account information into Identity Manager:

- [Configuring an Adapter](#)
- [Setting Account ID and Password Policies](#)
- [Creating a Data Loading Account](#)
- [Assigning Forms](#)

Configuring an Adapter

To manage accounts on resources, you must configure an adapter for each source of account information. If you are using the Load from File process or bulk actions, then the adapter configuration can wait until you are ready to reconcile. Otherwise, the adapter must be configured before you can load data into Identity Manager.

For general information about configuring an adapter, see “[Understanding and Managing Identity Manager Resources](#)” in *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Business Administrator’s Guide*. For detailed information about a specific adapter, refer to the *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Resources Reference* or the online help.

Setting Account ID and Password Policies

When you load account data from a resource using Load from Resource, reconciliation, or Active Sync, Identity Manager does not obtain the password from the resource. (It would be a security breach on the part of the resource if it yielded the password.) Therefore, the Identity Manager account passwords will not be the same as the those on the resource. By default, Identity Manager generates a random password that must be reset. However, you can also use

the password view in the user form to specify a temporary password, such as a literal string that is the same for everyone, or is the same as the Identity Manager account ID. See [Assigning User Forms](#) and [Chapter 3, “Identity Manager Views,” in *Sun Identity Manager Deployment Reference*](#) for more information.

For bulk actions, and Load from File, you can specify password values in the CSV file. These should be considered temporary passwords that users must change.

Policies establish limitations for Identity Manager accounts, and are categorized as:

- Identity Manager account policies -- Use these to establish user, password, and authentication policy options. Identity Manager account policies are assigned to organizations or users.
- Resource password and account ID policies -- Use these to set or select length rules, character type rules, and allowed words and attribute values.

Make sure you make any updates to the default policies before you begin loading account information into Identity Manager.

The following table lists the policies provided with Identity Manager as well as the default settings.

TABLE 4-2 Default Identity Manager Policies

Policy Name	Default Characteristics
AccountId Policy	Account IDs must have a minimum length of 4 characters and a maximum length of 16 characters.
Default Lighthouse Account Policy	Sets the account ID and password policies to AccountId Policy , and Password Policy . Passwords are generated by Identity Manager, rather than by users.
Password Policy	Passwords must have a minimum length of 4 characters and a maximum length of 16 characters. The password cannot contain the user's e-mail, first name, last name, or full name.
Windows 2000 Password Policy	<p>Passwords must have a minimum length of 6 characters. Passwords must have 3 of the following characteristics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ 1 numeric character ■ 1 uppercase letter ■ 1 lowercase letter ■ 1 special character <p>In addition, the password cannot contain the account ID.</p>

See [Chapter 3, “User and Account Management,” in *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Business Administrator’s Guide*](#) for more information about account and password policies.

Creating a Data Loading Account

It is recommended that you create a separate administrator account to perform data loading for the following reasons:

- Data loading actions can be tracked more easily when auditing is enabled.
- Every Identity Manager administrator is assigned a user form that creates and edits Identity Manager users. When you create an account for data loading, you can specify a streamlined form that runs quicker than the default forms. See the next section for information.

See “Creating Users and Working with User Accounts” in *Sun Identity Manager 8.1 Business Administrator’s Guide* for more information about creating accounts.

Assigning User Forms

In the context of data loading, user forms are used to perform background processing. For example, forms can work in conjunction with resource adapters to process information from an external resource before storing it in the Identity Manager repository. They can also be used to place users in the correct Organization based on input user data.

The user view is a data structure that contains all available information about an Identity Manager user. It includes:

- Attributes stored in the Identity Manager repository
- Attributes fetched from resource accounts
- Information derived from other sources such as resources, roles, and organizations

Views contain many attributes, and a view attribute is a named value within the view (for example, `waveset.accountId` is the attribute in the user view whose value is the Identity Manager account name).

Most form field names are associated with a view attribute. You associate a field with a view attribute by specifying the name of the view attribute as the name of the form field. For more information on the user view, including a reference for all attributes in the user view, see the chapter titled *Views*.

The following fields are often in a user form that loads users.

- `firstname`
- `lastname`
- `fullname`
- `email`
- `waveset.accountId`
- `waveset.organization`
- `EmployeeId`

The `waveset.accountId` and `waveset.organization` are values specific to Identity Manager. The `EmployeeId` attribute is a customized attribute. Its use is illustrated in *Defining Custom Correlation Keys*.

Identity Manager provides numerous forms that are pre-loaded into the system. Additional forms are also available in the `$WSHOME/sample/forms` directory. Many of the forms in this directory are resource-specific. You might wish to review these forms with the Identity Manager IDE to determine whether they should be used in production.

To increase performance during bulk operations, the user form assigned to an administrator should be as simple as possible. If you want to create a form for data loading, then you can remove code that is designed to display data. Another example of simplifying the form would be if you use bulk add actions. Your CSV file could define basic attributes such as `firstname` and `lastname`. These attributes could then be removed from the administrator's user form. See the chapter titled *Identity Manager Forms* for more information about creating and editing forms.

Note – Do not directly modify a form provided with Identity Manager. Instead, you should make a copy of the form, give it a unique name, and edit the renamed copy. This will prevent your customized copy from being overwritten during upgrades and service pack updates.

Linking to Accounts on Other Resources

Identity Manager uses correlation and confirmation rules to link accounts. A correlation rule looks for Identity Manager users that might own an account. It returns a list of users that match the criteria defined in the correlation rule. A confirmation rule tests an Identity Manager user against an account to determine whether the user actually does own the account. It returns true or false values. This two-stage approach allows Identity Manager to optimize correlation, by quickly finding possible owners (based on name or other attributes), and by performing expensive checks only on the possible owners.

Before you begin using correlation and confirmation rules, you must be familiar with the data that is present from the first data load. The Identity Manager `accountId` will always be present. If you performed a Load from File or a Create bulk action, then the values in the heading row of the CSV file are also present. If you performed a Load from Resource or reconciliation, some key attributes found on the resource will be present, but others will be present only if they are explicitly saved.

In addition, you must be familiar with the account data stored on the secondary resources as well. Ideally, a secondary resource contains data that overlaps with data that has already present in Identity Manager.

This can be more difficult than it sounds. Different resources often have varying requirements for user accounts. As an example, the following table compares the requirements and restrictions for a Windows account name and a Solaris account name.

TABLE 4-3 Comparison of Windows Account Name and Solaris Account Name Requirements

Characteristics	Windows	Solaris
Maximum length	20 characters	8 characters
Special characters permitted	All but “/\ [] ; = , + * ? < >	period (.), underscore (_), and hyphen (-) only
Able to specify a full name	Yes	There is one comment field. Traditionally, the comment field lists the user’s full name, but other information could be included.
Able to specify additional comments, such as employee ID	Yes	

The differences between Windows and Solaris account names highlight some of the difficulties in linking accounts:

- Because of the differences in maximum length, the account names will usually be different on these two systems. On Windows, users often have an account name that matches their first and last name. On Solaris, account names might be the concatenation of the first letter of the first name plus the first seven digits of the last name. Therefore, a correlation rule that compares account IDs will probably not be enough to link a Solaris account to a Windows account.
- To create a user account on Windows, the administrator must supply a display name. Solaris user accounts do not require display names, although the optional GECOS field can be used to specify a user’s name. There are no guidelines about the contents or format of this field. A user’s GECOS field might be blank or contain text unrelated to the user’s Windows display name. Therefore, a correlation rule that compares full names might not trigger as often as you would expect.

Consider the following questions as you prepare to link accounts:

- Do you have users with similar names, such as Mary A. Jones and Mary B. Jones, or John Doe Jr. and John Doe III? If so, how will you distinguish between them?
- Were account names on each resource defined in a consistent manner? If yes, then it will be easier to define a rule that compares an account ID on a resource with a value stored in Identity Manager.
- Did users have the ability to edit resource account data? If yes, then the data might not match values that are stored on a system that users cannot change.

Defining Custom Correlation Keys

A rule cannot compare an account value on a resource with an Identity Manager value unless the value is stored in the system. The accounts[Lighthouse] attribute stores many of these

values, but additional values must be added with the Extended User Attributes Configuration object. The system does not save attributes that are not registered in the configuration object.

By default, the following attributes are included as extended user attributes:

- `firstname`
- `lastname`
- `fullname`

Note – The `fullname` extended user attribute must be added to the list of `QueryableAttrNames`.

If you want to use a different attribute, such as an employee ID as part of a correlation rule, then you must add it to the User Extended Attributes configuration object. Use the following steps to do this:

▼ To Define a Custom Correlation Key

- 1 **Access the Identity Manager debug page at `http://PathToIDM/debug`. The System Settings page is displayed.**
- 2 **Select Configuration from the List Objects pull-down menu. The List Objects of type: Configuration page is displayed.**
- 3 **Select the edit link for User Extended Attributes.**
- 4 **Add the new attributes to the List element, for example:**
`<String>EmployeeId</String>`
- 5 **The attribute must be defined as an Identity Manager attribute on the Account Attributes (schema map) page for the resource.**
- 6 **Save your changes. Identity Manager returns to the System Settings debug page.**
 The custom attribute must also be added to the `QueryableAttrNames` element in the `UserUIConfig` configuration object.
- 7 **Select Configuration from the List Objects pull-down menu. The List Objects of type: Configuration page is displayed.**
- 8 **Select the edit link for UserUIConfig.**
- 9 **Add the new attributes to the `<QueryableAttrNames><List>` element, for example:**
`<String>EmployeeId</String>`

- 10 Save your changes. Identity Manager returns to the System Settings debug page.
- 11 Restart your application server.

Creating Custom Rules

Identity Manager predefines a number of correlation and confirmation rules in `sample/reconRules.xml`. You can use these as a basis for your own rules. Rules must be assigned a subtype of `SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CORRELATION_RULE` or `SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CONFIRMATION_RULE`.

The following rule compares the `account.EmployeeId` attribute, which is defined on the secondary resource, with the `EmployeeId` attribute that was previously loaded into Identity Manager. If the secondary resource has an `account.EmployeeId` value, then the correlation rule returns a list of users that match the `EmployeeId`.

```
<Rule subtype='SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CORRELATION_RULE' name='Correlate Employee IDs'
  <cond>
    <ref>account.EmployeeId</ref>
    <list>
      <new class='com.waveset.object.AttributeCondition'>
        <s>EmployeeId</s>
        <s>equals</s>
        <ref>account.EmployeeId</ref>
      </new>
    </list>
  </cond>
</Rule>
```

In this example, the `EmployeeId` attribute has been previously added to the `User Extended Attributes` and `UserUIConfig` configuration objects. If this attribute has not been included as a default Identity Manager attribute name for the resource, it must also be added or edited on the schema map for the resource.

Correlation rules return a list of possible matches. If the results are expected to return only one match, such as an employee ID, then no confirmation rule would be needed. However, if there could be multiple matches, which could be the case if correlation found accounts that matched by first and last name, then a confirmation rule would be needed to further identify the match.

Rules can be added to Identity Manager by using the Identity Manager IDE, importing an XML file, or editing and renaming an existing rule using the debug page.

Manually Linking Accounts

Identity Manager provides several mechanisms that can be used to assign accounts when correlation and confirmation rules do not find a match.

Using the Account Index

The Account Index records the last known state of each resource account known to Identity Manager. It is primarily maintained by reconciliation, but other Identity Manager functions will also update the Account Index, as needed.

Note – Load from resource, load from file, and bulk actions do not update the Account Index.

To view the account index, click the Resources tab, then click the Account Index link on the left. Then navigate to a resource to display the status of all accounts on that resource.

When you right-click on an uncorrelated account (represented in the Account Index table with a situation of “UNMATCHED” and an Owner of “_UNKNOWN_”), Identity Manager displays a menu that presents you with the options of creating a new Identity Manager user account, running reconciliation on a single account using the reconciliation policy in effect for the resource, specifying an owner, or deleting or disabling the resource account. If you select the “Specify Owner” option, Identity Manager displays a screen that allows you to search for owners that might criteria that you specify. Refer to Business Administrator's Guide for more information.

Enabling Self-Discovery

The Identity Manager User Interface can be configured to allow Identity Manager users to discover their own resource accounts. This means that a user with an Identity Manager identity can associate it with an existing, but unassociated, resource account. Self-discovery can be enabled only on resources that support pass-through authentication.

To enable self-discovery, you must edit the End User Resources configuration object, and add to it the name of each resource on which the user will be allowed to discover accounts.

▼ To Enable Self-Discovery

- 1 **Access the Identity Manager debug page at <http://PathToIDM/debug>. The System Settings page is displayed.**
- 2 **Select Configuration from the List Objects pull-down menu. The List Objects of type: Configuration page is displayed.**
- 3 **Select the edit link for End User Resources.**

- 4 **After the <List> element, add <String>Resource</String>, where Resource matches the name of a resource object in the repository. For example, to allow users to self-discover their accounts on resources AD and Solaris, edit the <List> element as follows:**

```
<List>
  <String>AD</String>
  <String>Solaris</String>
</List>
```

- 5 **Save your changes. Identity Manager returns to the System Settings debug page.**

When self-discovery is enabled, the user is presented with a new menu item on the Identity Manager User Interface (**Inform Identity Manager of Other Accounts**) This area allows him to select a resource from an available list, and then enter the resource account ID and password to link the account with his Identity Manager identity.

Example Scenarios

This section provides scenarios that illustrate the process of loading accounts from one or more resources. The following scenarios discuss issues that might arise in your environment.

- Active Directory, SecurID, and Solaris
- LDAP, PeopleSoft, and Remedy
- Expedited Bulk Add

Active Directory, SecurID, and Solaris

A company wants to use Identity Manager to manage Active Directory, SecurID, and Solaris accounts. All workers have an Active Directory account, and most employees have a SecurID account. Only a fraction of employees have a Solaris account. After examining the account data on each resource, the Identity Manager administrator has determined the following attributes can be used as correlation keys.

TABLE 4-4 Possible Correlation Keys

Possible Correlation Keys	Active Directory	SecurID	Solaris
Account ID matches AD	N/A	Yes	No
Employee ID	Yes	No	No
Full name	Yes	Yes	Yes (Description attribute)

Because all employees have an Active Directory account, it will be used as the first data loading resource. SecurID will be loaded second, because the account IDs on this resource match those

on Active Directory. Account IDs are always unique, therefore this is a better correlation key than full name. The Active Directory and SecurID accounts are expected to correlate without problems.

Correlating the Solaris accounts will be difficult. The only correlation attribute that exists on Solaris accounts is the user's full name. Solaris does not have individual attributes for defining first name and last name. As a result, the correlation rule will be a comparison of the string defined in the Solaris `useadd -c` command with the `fullname` value in Active Directory. The comparison will often fail, due to factors such as use of nicknames or extraneous spaces and punctuation.

Example Users

In this scenario, the following users demonstrate some of the possible problems you might encounter when loading accounts.

TABLE 4-5 Dataloading Scenario: Potential Problems during Account Loading

Worker name	AD and SecurID Logon Name	AD Full Name	Solaris Account Name	Solaris Description
Anthony Harris	AJ Harris	Anthony J Harris	ajharris	A.J. Harris
Isabelle Moreno	Isabelle Moreno	Isabelle Moreno	imoreno	Isabelle Moreno
John Thomas (Sr.)	John Thomas	John Thomas	jthomas	John Thomas
John Thomas (Jr.)	John P. Thomas	John P. Thomas	jthomas2	John Thomas
Robert Blinn	Robert Blinn	Bob Blinn	rblinn	Bob Blinn
Theodore Benjamin	Theodore Benjamin	Theodore Benjamin	tbenjami	Ted Benjamin

Loading Active Directory Accounts

Use the following steps as a guideline for using reconciliation to load Active Directory accounts into Identity Manager.

▼ To Load Active Directory Users

- 1 **From the Resources page in the Administrator Interface, select the Windows 2000/ Active Directory resource from the New Resource pull-down menu. Then configure the adapter.**

Make sure you do not delete the `accountId` or `fullname` Identity Manager user attribute from schema map. Also make sure the identity template is correct. See the online help and the Resource Reference for more information about configuring the adapter.

- 2 **(Optional) Edit the account and password policies as desired. See *Setting Account ID and Password Policies* for more information.**

- 3 **(Optional) Create a user form that will be used for reconciliation.** See *Assigning User Forms* for more information.
- 4 **(Optional) Create an Identity Manager user for performing data loading.** Assign the user form created in the previous step to the user.
- 5 **Configure the reconciliation policy for the resource.** On the first resource, the correlation rule is not important, and the confirmation rule is not used when creating Identity Manager users. Since this is the first resource, you probably want to assign the UNMATCHED situation to the value “Create new Identity Manager user based on resource account.”
- 6 **If you created a user to perform data loading, log in as that user.** This step is not necessary for reconciliation, but would be for Load from File, Load from Resource, or Bulk actions.
- 7 **Reconcile the Active Directory resource.**

Results

If you used the default Identity Manager account policy and default Active Directory identity template, Identity Manager will not create an Identity Manager user that links to Theodore Benjamin’s Active Directory account, because his name contains more than 16 characters. For this example, the account ID policy was set to 25 characters.

Identity Manager creates user accounts for all resource accounts with a situation status of CONFIRMED. This should include all users that passed the password and account ID policies. Unless your user form specified otherwise, the Identity Manager account name will be the same as Active Directory login name.

Loading SecurID Accounts

When SecurID is implemented, SecurID user records are usually imported from a Microsoft Security Accounts Manager (SAM) database or from an LDAP server. As a result, the SecurID account IDs match those from the source. This makes correlating users a relatively simple task, because there is a one-to-one correlation between SecurID and Active Directory accounts. The User Name Matches Account ID correlation rule can be used to quickly link these accounts.

To load SecurID accounts, perform the procedure described in [“Loading Active Directory Accounts” on page 77](#), with the following modifications:

- When you are configuring the SecurID adapter, ensure that you do not delete the accountId Identity Manager user attribute.
- Configure the reconciliation policy as follows:
 - Set the correlation rule to “User Name Matches Account ID.”

- Since Active Directory is considered to be an authoritative source, and SecurID relies on Active Directory account information, you might want to set the UNMATCHED situation option to “Delete Resource Account” or “Disable Resource Account.” The UNASSIGNED situation should be set to “Link resource account to Identity Manager user.”

All SecurID accounts should correlate with the Active Directory account. Perform any additional steps to resolve UNMATCHED or DISPUTED situations.

Loading Solaris Accounts

In this scenario, the `fullName` attribute is the only correlation key. This is a weak correlation key, because differences in spacing and punctuation guarantee matches will fail. In addition, users can change their display names with the Solaris `chfn` command. Even if full names once matched, they might not agree if any users have run the `chfn` command.

By default, the `fullName` attribute is not queryable. To enable this feature, you must edit the `UserUIConfig` configuration object, and add the `fullName` attribute to the `<QueryableAttrNames><List>` element. See *Defining Custom Correlation Keys* for more information.

You will also need to create a custom rule to correlate `fullName` attributes. The following example, which is named “Correlate Full Names”, performs the correlation. It compares the value of the `account.Description` attribute from the Solaris resource to the `fullName` attribute, a system attribute that was populated from Active Directory.

```
<Rule subtype='SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CORRELATION_RULE' name='Correlate Full Names'
  <cond>
    <ref>account.Description</ref>
    <list>
      <new class='com.waveset.object.AttributeCondition'>
        <s>fullName</s>
        <s>equals</s>
        <ref>account.Description</ref>
      </new>
    </list>
  </cond>
</Rule>
```

This rule compares the `Description` attribute from the Solaris resource with the Identity Manager `fullName` attribute. If the two attributes match, the accounts are correlated, with a situation of `CONFIRMED`.

To load Solaris accounts, perform the procedure described in [“Loading Active Directory Accounts” on page 77](#), with the following modifications:

- When you are configuring the Solaris adapter, ensure that you do not delete the `accountId` or `Description` Identity Manager user attribute.

- Configure the reconciliation policy as follows:
 - Set the correlation rule to “Correlate Full Names” (the example rule).
 - There could be numerous Solaris accounts that do not correlate with the accounts already loaded into Identity Manager. Set the UNASSIGNED situation to “Link resource account to Identity Manager user”. In most cases, you should set the UNMATCHED situation to “Do nothing”. Deleting or disabling unmatched users could result with a loss of data or productivity.

The following table describes the users in this dataloading scenario.

TABLE 4-6 Users in Dataloading Scenario

Worker name	AD Full Name	Solaris Account Name	Solaris Description
Anthony Harris	Anthony J Harris	ajharris	A.J. Harris
Isabelle Moreno	Isabelle Moreno	imoreno	Isabelle Moreno
John Thomas (Sr.)	John Thomas	jthoma	John Thomas
John Thomas (Jr.)	John P. Thomas	jthomas2	John Thomas
Robert Blinn	Bob Blinn	rblinn	Bob Blinn
Theodore Benjamin	Theodore Benjamin	tbenjami	Ted Benjamin

In this example, only accounts for Isabelle Moreno can be expected to correlate.

- The accounts for Anthony Harris, John Thomas (Jr.), Robert Blinn, and Theodore Benjamin will not correlate because the Active Directory `fullName` attributes do not exactly match the Solaris `Description` attributes. These accounts will have a situation of UNMATCHED. In this scenario, the Solaris account names are based on first initial plus last name. With the exception of the John Thomas account, assigning these unmatched Solaris accounts is easy.
- The Solaris accounts `jthomas` and `jthomas2` will have a situation of DISPUTED. Both of these accounts have a `Description` value of John Thomas. You must find another means to determine which user Solaris accounts `jthomas` and `jthomas2` belong to. Ideally, you could use a confirmation rule to distinguish between the two accounts. However, Solaris and Active Directory accounts do not contain enough intersecting attributes to create a confirmation rule.

LDAP, PeopleSoft, and Remedy

In this scenario, the LDAP or PeopleSoft resource could theoretically be the primary resource.

- If all employees and contractors are tracked in PeopleSoft, then this application can be considered an authoritative resource.

- If all employees have LDAP accounts, then LDAP could be considered an authoritative resource.

Remedy is not a candidate to be the primary resource, because only a small percentage of workers have a Remedy account.

In many cases, if you have multiple authoritative resources, then any of those resources can be loaded first. However, the PeopleSoft Component adapter performs Active Sync functions only. (There is another PeopleSoft adapter available, but it is limited in scope.) The PeopleSoft Component adapter does not perform reconciliation, and as a result, reconciliation policy cannot be set for the resource. There are no correlation rules available, so the PeopleSoft accounts must be loaded first. The Identity Manager account names will match PeopleSoft EMPLID (employee ID) values.

The PeopleSoft employee ID is ideal as a correlation key, because it is unique for all users defined in the system. The LDAP inetOrgPerson object contains an employeeNumber attribute. An employee ID could also be stored in an attribute with a label such as Description, or in a custom attribute. This scenario assumes the employeeNumber LDAP attribute is in use.

The Remedy adapter does not provide default attributes. You must customize the adapter to fit your environment. Because the Remedy application is often configured to send email when a request enters the system, the e-mail attribute should be available. The LDAP inetOrgPerson object also contains the mail attribute. Therefore, the e-mail address will be the correlation key.

The following table lists the correlation keys for each resource in this scenario.

TABLE 4-7 Dataloading Scenario: Correlation Keys for Each Resource

Possible Correlation Keys	PeopleSoft	LDAP	Remedy
Employee ID	Yes	Yes	No
E-mail address	No	Yes	Yes

Example Users

In this scenario, the following users demonstrate some of the possible problems you might encounter when loading accounts.

TABLE 4-8 Deployment Scenario: Possible Problems during Account Loading

Worker name	PeopleSoft EMPLI	LDAP EmployeeNumber	LDAP Email(@example.com)	Remedy Email(@example.com)
Robert Blinn	945	945	Bob.Blinn	bblinn
William Cady	None	None	William.Cady	William.Cady
Eric D'Angelo	1096	1096	Eric.D'Angelo	Eric.D'Angelo

TABLE 4-8 Deployment Scenario: Possible Problems during Account Loading (Continued)

Worker name	PeopleSoft EMPLI	LDAP EmployeeNumber	LDAP Email(@example.com)	Remedy Email(@example.com)
Renée LeBec	891	None	None	None
Josie Smith	1436	1463	Josie.Smith	None
John Thomas	509	509	John.Thomas	None
John P. Thomas	None	None	John.P.Thomas	John.P.Thomas

Loading PeopleSoft Users

Use the following steps as a guideline for using reconciliation to load PeopleSoft accounts using Active Sync into Identity Manager.

▼ To Load PeopleSoft Users

- 1 From the Resources page in the Identity Manager Administrator Interface, select the PeopleSoft Component resource from the New Resource pull-down menu. If this resource is not displayed, click the Configure Managed Resources button and add `com.waveset.adapter.PeopleSoftComponentActiveSyncAdapter` as a custom resource. This adapter requires the installation of a JAR file provided by PeopleSoft. See the Resource Reference for more information.
- 2 Configure the adapter. Make sure you do not delete the `accountId` or `fullName` Identity Manager user attribute from schema map. Also make sure the identity template is correct.
- 3 (Optional) Edit the account and password policies as desired. See *Setting Account ID and Password Policies* for more information.
- 4 (Optional) Create a user form that will be used for data loading. The `$/SHOME/sample/forms/PeopleSoftForm.xml` file can be used as a foundation. See *Assigning User Forms* for more information.
- 5 Start ActiveSync on the PeopleSoft adapter.

Results of This Scenario

Identity Manager loads all users unless the user form indicates that an account should not be loaded. In this scenario, Renée LeBec does not have an LDAP or Remedy account. Presumably, she no longer works for the company. If you used the default PeopleSoft form, then Identity Manager disables PeopleSoft accounts for terminated employees.

The accounts for William Cady and John P. Thomas are not created because they are not defined within PeopleSoft.

Loading LDAP Users

In this scenario, the `employeeNumber` attribute in the LDAP `inetOrgPerson` object is the correlation key. This attribute is not listed by default in the schema map for the LDAP adapter, so you must add it manually. For this example, add the attribute `EmployeeId` to the Identity Manager User Attribute side of the schema map, and `employeeNumber` to the Resource User Attribute side.

Note – The PeopleSoft adapter uses the Identity Manager attribute name `EmployeeId` by default. This value was chosen to maintain consistency between LDAP and PeopleSoft, although this is not required.

The e-mail address will be the correlation key for the Remedy resource, but it must be set-up and configured before you load LDAP accounts. The `inetOrgPerson` object contains the `mail` attribute, which will be the correlation key for loading Remedy accounts. The `mail` attribute also must be added to the schema map. Add the `email` attribute to the Identity Manager User Attribute side of the schema map, and `mail` to the Resource User Attribute side. `email` is a predefined Identity Manager attribute, so it is easier to use this attribute, rather than editing the User Extended Attributes or `UserUIConfig` configuration objects to include a `mail` attribute.

Identity Manager stores account IDs in the User object in the attribute `resourceAccountIds`. This is a multi-valued attribute, with each value taking the form `accountId@objectId`. You can create a rule that will compare the `EmployeeId` value from LDAP to the PeopleSoft `accountId` using the following rule:

Comparing `EmployeeId` value from LDAP to PeopleSoft `accountId`

```
<Rule subtype='SUBTYPE_ACCOUNT_CORRELATION_RULE' name='Correlate EmployeeId with accountId'>
  <cond>
    <ref>account.EmployeeId</ref>
    <list>
      <new class='com.waveset.object.AttributeCondition'>
        <s>resourceAccountIds</s>
        <s>startsWith</s>
        <concat>
          <ref>account.EmployeeId</ref>
          <s>@</s>
        </concat>
      </new>
    </list>
  </cond>
</Rule>
```

In this scenario, it is not necessary to add attributes to the User Extended Attributes or UserUIConfig configuration objects, because the accountId and email attributes are always available to the system.

▼ To Load LDAP Accounts

- 1 **From the Resources page in the Administrator Interface, select the LDAP resource from the New Resource pull-down menu. Then configure the adapter as follows:**
 - a. **Add the EmployeeId and email Identity Manager User attributes.**
 - b. **Make sure you do not delete the accountId Identity Manager user attribute from the schema map.**
 - c. **Ensure that the identity template is correct.**

See the online help and the Resource Reference for more information about configuring the adapter.
- 2 **Configure the reconciliation policy for the resource as follows.**
 - a. **Set the Correlation Rule to Correlate EmployeeId with accountId.**
 - b. **Set the following situation values:**

Set the UNASSIGNED situation to “Link resource account to Identity Manager user”.

Set the UNMATCHED situation to an appropriate action. You might need to discuss with the PeopleSoft administrator about the possibility of adding users who are discovered on other resources. If you select the “Create new Identity Manager user based on resource account” option, the Identity Manager user will have, by default, an account name based on the LDAP cn attribute.
- 3 **Reconcile the LDAP resource.**

Results of This Scenario

In this scenario, accounts for William Cady, Josie Smith, and John P. Thomas will be in the UNMATCHED state. For Josie Smith, the employee ID values on the PeopleSoft and LDAP resources do not match. Because employee IDs are generated by PeopleSoft, then LDAP value is incorrect. Correct the mistake and reconcile again.

William Cady and John P. Thomas are not defined in PeopleSoft. As mentioned in step 2 of loading LDAP account procedure, you should consider whether the accounts need to be added to PeopleSoft.

Loading Remedy Users

The Remedy adapter does not have predefined account attributes. You must add these attributes to the schema map. Remedy uses integers to uniquely identify each attribute that it tracks. For example, the Remedy account ID might be assigned a value such as 1002000100. These Remedy attribute numbers must be added as Resource User Attributes on the schema map. At minimum, you must add the following Identity Manager User attributes:

- `accountId`
- `email` (the correlation key)

The `USER_EMAIL_MATCHES_ACCOUNT_EMAIL_CORR` correlation rule will link the Remedy accounts to the Identity Manager accounts.

▼ To Load Remedy Accounts

- 1 **From the Resources page in the Identity Manager Administrator Interface, select the Remedy resource from the New Resource pull-down menu. Then configure the adapter as follows:**

At minimum, add the `accountId` and `email` Identity Manager User attributes. Other attributes can also be added.

See the online help and the Resource Reference for more information about configuring the adapter.

- 2 **Configure the reconciliation policy for the resource as follows.**
 - a. **Set the Correlation Rule to `USER_EMAIL_MATCHES_ACCOUNT_EMAIL_CORR`.**
 - b. **Set the following situation values:**
 - i. **Set the UNASSIGNED situation to “Link resource account to Identity Manager user”.**
 - ii. **Set the UNMATCHED situation to an appropriate action.**
 - c. **Reconcile the Remedy resource.**

Results of This Scenario

The Remedy accounts for William Cady, Eric D’Angelo, and John P. Thomas correlated successfully because the email addresses defined in LDAP and Remedy matched. The Remedy account for Robert Blinn did not correlate. The e-mail address on Remedy was an alias. The other users in this scenario do not have Remedy accounts.

Expedited Bulk Add Scenario

The following procedure illustrates how a few users can be quickly added to Identity Manager using Create actions. Any resources referenced in the CSV file must be defined within Identity Manager before the CSV file is loaded into the system.

▼ To Perform a Bulk Add

- 1 **Generate a CSV file that contains information needed to perform a Create bulk action. See *Create Bulk Actions* for more information about the format of the CSV file.**
- 2 **If your CSV file does not contain passwords, set the default Password Policy Options so that passwords are generated by the system. To do this, click the Configure tab, then Policies on the left. Click the Default Identity Manager Account Policy link. Then select the Generated option from Password Provided by drop-menu.**

- 3 **Create a new provisioning task based on the default Create User provisioning task.**

From the XML view, in the TaskDefinition tag, edit the value of the resultLimit parameter to 0. This value determines the number of seconds the results of the task is to be retained.

Then delete the following sections from the task:

```
<Activity id='1' name='Approve'>
...
</Activity>
```

```
<Activity id='3' name='Notify'>
...
</Activity>
```

Note – The activity calling to the provisioner must remain, or users will not be created properly.

Be sure to rename the task, to a value such as Fast Create User.

- 4 **Create a new user form based on the default User form.**

From the XML view, replace the entire <Form> . . . </Form> structure with the following:

```
<Form help='account/modify-help.xml'>
  <Field name="viewOptions.Process">
    <Expansion>
      <s>Fast Create User</s>
    </Expansion>
  </Field>
</Form>
```

Be sure to rename the user form, to a value such as Fast User Form.

- 5 Create an Identity Manager account that will be used to load accounts into Identity Manager. Assign the user form created in [“Expedited Bulk Add Scenario” on page 86](#) to this user.
- 6 Log in to Identity Manager using the account created in the previous step.
- 7 Run the Create bulk action.

Data Exporter

This chapter describes the Data Exporter feature and provides information required to deploy it.

What is Data Exporter?

Identity Manager processes user account information on a wide range of systems and applications, providing a controlled, audited environment useful for making changes that remain in compliance with corporate policies. Identity Manager is a “data light” architecture. It locally stores a minimal amount of account information on the systems and applications that it manages and fetches the data from the actual system or application when necessary.

This architecture helps reduce data duplication and minimizes the risks of transferring stale data during provisioning operations, but there are times when having the account data stored locally is desirable. For example, being able to query account information without accessing the underlying system or application can bring significant performance improvements for some operations, such as identifying all accounts that have a specific attribute value. Typically, the use of system or application account data is related to reporting operations rather than provisioning operations, but in some cases the data does have value to the organization.

In addition to being a “data light” architecture, Identity Manager uses a “current data only” data model, which means it does not keep historical records (other than the audit and system logs). The advantage of this model is that the size of the operational repository tends to be proportional to the number of accounts, systems, and applications being managed. As a result, the provisioning system itself needs less maintenance. However, the data processed by Identity Manager may be valuable for historical processing.

For example, questions similar to the following rely on historical data:

- Who had access to system X between time A and B, and who approved of that access?
- How many provisioning requests have been processed in the last 48 hours, and how long did each request take?

Data Exporter allows you to selectively capture a large amount of the information processed by Identity Manager, including the account and workflow data necessary to answer questions like those listed above. Identity Manager produces this data in a form that can flow into a data warehouse to be further processed or used as a basis for queries and transformations using commercial database transformation, reporting, and analysis tools.

You are not required to export data from Identity Manager. If you do not need to track this type of the historical data, you are not required to keep it. If you require this data, you are free to establish your own data aging and retention policies without impact to Identity Manager.

Exportable Data Types

Data Exporter can export both persistent and transient data. Persistent refers to the data Identity Manager stores in the repository. Transient data is data that is either not stored in the Identity Manager repository by default, or data that has a lifecycle that precludes periodic fetching of changed records. Some types of data are both transient and persistent, such as Task Instances and WorkItems. These data types are considered transient because they are deleted by Identity Manager at times that are not externally predictable.

Identity Manager exports the following data types.

TABLE 5-1 Supported Data Types

Data Type	Persistence	Description
Account	Persistent	Record containing the linkage between a User and a ResourceAccount
AdminGroup	Persistent	A group of IdentityManager permissions available on all ObjectGroups
AdminRole	Persistent	The permissions assigned to one or more ObjectGroups
AuditPolicy	Persistent	A collection of rules evaluated against an IdentityManager object to determine complicity to a business policy
ComplianceViolation	Persistent	Tracks a User's non-compliance with an AuditPolicy
Entitlement	Persistent	A record containing the list of attestations for a specific User
LogRecord	Persistent	A record containing a single audit record
ObjectGroup	Persistent	A security container that is modeled as an organization
Resource	Persistent	A system/application on which accounts are provisioned
ResourceAccount	Transient	A set of attributes that comprise an account on a specific Resource
Role	Persistent	A logical container for access
Rule	Persistent	A block of logic that can be executed by Identity Manager

TABLE 5-1 Supported Data Types (Continued)

Data Type	Persistence	Description
TaskInstance	Transient and persistent	A record indicating an executing or completed process
User	Persistent	A logical user that includes zero or more accounts
WorkflowActivity	Transient	A single activity of an Identity Manager workflow
WorkItem	Transient and persistent	A manual action from an Identity Manager workflow

Data Exporter allows you to define strategies for exporting each type of data, depending on the exact needs of the warehouse. For example, some data types may need to export every change to an object while other data types may be satisfied with exporting at a fixed interval, potentially skipping intermediate changes to the data.

You can select which types will be exported. Once a type is selected, all new and modified instances of that type will be exported. Persistent data types can also be configured to export deleted objects.

Data Exporter Architecture

When Data Exporter is enabled, Identity Manager stores each detected change to a specified object (data type) as a record in a table in the repository. At a configurable interval for each data type, the system executes two queries that select the records to export.

- The first query looks for persistent objects of the specified type in the repository that have changed since the last export. The Warehouse Task exports these records, determines the timestamp of the most recently-changed record, and uses this value as the starting point the next time the query is run.
- The second query searches the queue table. It locates all records of the specified data type, exports them, then deletes the records from the queue. Any records added after the query completes will be exported at the next cycle.

The exported records are not ordered. However, there are fields in the exported data that allow a subsequent query of the warehouse to put the data in chronological order.

In a typical deployment, Data Exporter writes data to a set of staging tables. Identity Manager provides SQL scripts that define these tables for each type of supported database. You do not need to modify these tables, unless your Identity Manager deployment contains extended attributes that need to be exported. However, if you have extended attributes that will be exported, then you must customize your export schema and compile your own factory class for handling these attributes. For more information, see [“Customizing Data Exporter” on page 99](#).

Exporting data to staging tables allows you to write your own Extract, Transform, and Load (ETL) infrastructure so that the data can be processed for storage in a data warehouse, and

ultimately, in a datamart. Timestamp manipulation is a commonly-implemented transformation. The system uses the `java.sql.Timestamp` format of `YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss`. Although the day of the week is not explicitly specified in the timestamp, it can be extracted using a transformation.

If you do not need to transfer information to a warehouse and datamart, then you can consider the staging tables to be the final destination. In this case, be sure to use the same connection information for read and write operations. See the Business Administrator's Guide for information about configuring Data Exporter.

Forensic queries allow Identity Manager to read data that has been stored in the data warehouse (or staging tables in a simple environment). They can identify users or roles based on current or historical values of the user, role, or related data types. A forensic query is similar to a Find User or Find Role report, but it differs in that the matching criteria can be evaluated against historical data, and because it allows you to search attributes that are of data types other than the user or role being queried. See the Business Administrator's Guide for information about defining forensic query.

The following diagram illustrates the data flow when Data Exporter is enabled.

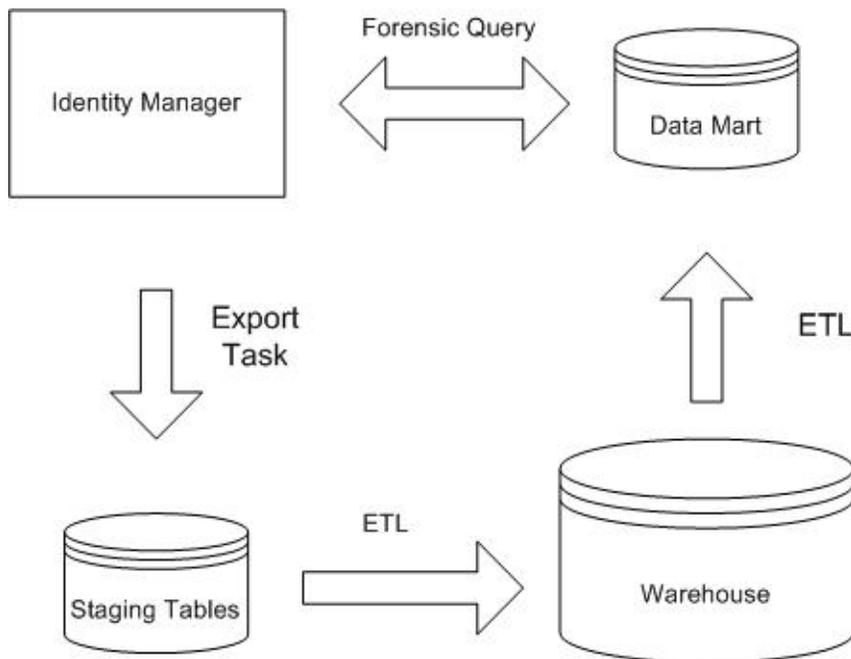


FIGURE 5-1 Data Exporter Data Flow

Planning for Data Exporter

Before you begin deploying Data Exporter, you need to plan for the following:

- How much data will you export? The number of exported data types determines how many database tables will be required. If you choose to queue all changes to a data type, or even to export object deletions, the database requirements grow. See [“Database Considerations” on page 93](#) for more information.
- Do you need to have a dedicated export server? Performance can be diminished if you export data on the same server that performs complex workflows. See [“Export Server Considerations” on page 95](#) for more information.
- Do you have custom extended attributes that need to be exported? If yes, you must update the export schema and recompile the Warehouse Interface Code (WIC) and update the export schema. See [“Customizing Data Exporter” on page 99](#) for more information.

Database Considerations

Data Exporter can export to any database that is supported as an Identity Manager repository. In addition, Data Exporter should also work with any RDBMS supported by Hibernate 3.2.

Hibernate Support

Data Exporter uses Hibernate 3.2 for the bi-directional mapping between Identity Manager Java objects and RDBMS tables. Identity Manager provides a set of files (one for each data type) that control the mapping between warehouse beans and RDBMS tables. These files are located in the `$WSHOME/exporter/hbm` directory.

See [“Customizing Data Exporter” on page 99](#) for more details.

Hibernate uses C3P0 as its connection pool. C3P0 sends its log entries to the JRE logging system, which has INFO-level logging enabled by default. To restrict what is logged, add the following lines to the bottom of the `$JRE/lib/logging.properties` file:

```
com.mchange.v2.c3p0.impl.level=SEVERE
com.mchange.v2.c3p0.level=SEVERE
com.mchange.v2.log.level=SEVERE
```

Object/Relational Mapping

Identity Manager uses (Java) objects to perform its work, but when these objects are to be exported to a set of relational database tables, the objects must undergo a transformation commonly called *object/relational mapping*. This transformation is necessary because there are differences between the types of data that can be expressed in a RDBMS relationship and the types of data that can be expressed in an arbitrary Java object. For example, consider the following Java class:

```

class Widget {
    private String _id;
    private Map<String,Widget> _subWidgets;
    ...
}

```

This class presents a problem when expressed in relational terms, because the `_subWidgets` field is a nested structure. If you try decomposing two hierarchies of `Widget` objects that have shared subWidgets into a set of RDBMS tables, and delete one of the hierarchies, you quickly end up with a reference-counting problem.

To address the representational differences, Identity Manager places some constraints on what type of data can be exported. Specifically, the limit allows for the top-level Java object to contain scalar attributes, lists of scalar attributes, and maps of scalar attributes. In a few instances, Identity Manager needs a slightly richer expression, and to resolve these cases Identity Manager has introduced the `PseudoModel`. A `PseudoModel` is conceptually a data structure containing only scalar attributes. A top-level Java object can contain attributes that are `PseudoModels` or Lists of `PseudoModels`. `PseudoModels` are Identity Manager structures that cannot be extended. The following is an example of a `PseudoModel`.

```

class TopLevelModel
{
    private String _name;
    private List<PseudoModelPoint> _points;
}
class PseudoModelPoint
{
    private String _name;
    private String _color;
    private int _x;
    private int _y;
    private int _z;
}

```

Identity Manager can properly perform the object/relational transformation of `TopLevelModel` because `PseudoModelPoint` only contains scalar attributes. In query-notation, the color attribute of the `PseudoModel` is addressable as:

```
TopLevelModel.points[].color
```

When inspecting the Identity Manager Data Export schema, you will find a few `PseudoModel` types. These types represent some of the more complex data in the top-level export models. You cannot query for a `PseudoModel` directly because a `PseudoModel` is not exported directly. A `PseudoModel` is simply structured data held by an attribute of a top-level model.

Database Tables

The number of RDBMS tables defined in the warehouse DDL depends on the number of model types being exported, and what types of attributes each model is exporting. In general, each model requires three to five tables, with list/map valued attributes stored in their own table. The default DDL contains about 50 tables. After studying the export schema, you may choose to modify the Hibernate mapping files to exclude some attributes tables.

Space Requirements

The amount of space required in the exporter warehouse depends on

- Which objects are to be exported
- How long the records are to stay in the export warehouse
- How busy the Identity Manager servers are

WorkflowActivity and ResourceAccount are usually the highest-volume exported models. For example, a single workflow could contain multiple activities, and as each workflow is executed, Identity Manager could create dozens of new records to be written to the warehouse. Editing a User object may result in one ResourceAccount record per account linked to the User. TaskInstance, WorkItem and LogRecord are also high-volume models. A single Identity Manager server can produce over 50,000 object changes to be exported in one hour of operation.

Export Server Considerations

You should consider running the export task on a dedicated server, especially if you expect to export a large amount of data. The export task is efficient at transferring data from Identity Manager to the warehouse and will consume as much CPU as possible during the export operation. If you do not use a dedicated server, you should restrict the server from handling interactive traffic, because the response time will degrade dramatically during a large export.

The Export Task primarily performs input/output operations between the Identity Manager repository and the staging tables. The memory requirements of the export task are modest, although the memory needs increase as the number of queued records increases. The export task is typically constrained by the speed of the input/output and uses multiple concurrent threads to increase throughput.

Choosing the appropriate server requires experimentation. If the transfer rates of the input (Identity Manager repository) or the output (staging tables) are slow, the export task will not saturate a modern CPU. The query speed of the input path will not be an issue, as the export operation only issues a query at the beginning of the export cycle. The majority of the time is spent reading and writing records.

Identity Manager provides JMX MBeans to determine the input and output data rates. See Business Administrator's Guide for more information about these MBeans.

Loading the Default DDL

This section lists the commands needed to create a database and load the default Data Definition Language (DDL). The export DDL is generated by tools provided with Identity Manager to match the current export schema.

The `create_warehouse` scripts are located in the `$WSHOME/exporter` directory. Identity Manager also includes corresponding `drop_warehouse` scripts in the same directory.

DB2

Execute a script similar to the following as the system DBA. Be sure to create the `idm_warehouse` database and the `idm_warehouse/idm_warehouse` user before running the script.

```
CONNECT TO idm_warehouse USER idm_warehouse using 'idm_warehouse'  
CREATE SCHEMA idm_warehouse AUTHORIZATION idm_warehouse  
GRANT CONNECT ON DATABASE TO USER idm_warehouse
```

To load the DDL, add the following line to the `%WSHOME%\exporter\create_warehouse.db2` file:

```
CONNECT TO idm_warehouse USER idm_warehouse using 'idm_warehouse'
```

Then run the following command (assuming a Windows DB2 server):

```
db2cmd db2setcp.bat db2 -f create_warehouse.db2
```

MySQL

Execute a script similar to the following as the system DBA.

```
# Create the database (Schema in MySQL terms)  
CREATE DATABASE IF NOT EXISTS idm_warehouse CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;  
# Give permissions to the "idm_warehouse" userid logging in from any host.  
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES on idm_warehouse.* TO idm_warehouse IDENTIFIED BY 'idm_warehouse';  
# Give permissions to the "idm_warehouse" userid logging in from any host.  
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES on idm_warehouse.* TO idm_warehouse@'%' IDENTIFIED BY 'idm_warehouse';  
# Give permissions to the "idm_warehouse" user when it logs in from the localhost.  
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES on idm_warehouse.* TO idm_warehouse@localhost IDENTIFIED BY 'idm_warehouse';
```

To load the DDL, execute the following command:

```
# mysql -uidm_warehouse -pidm_warehouse -Didm_warehouse < create_warehouse.mysql
```

Oracle

Execute a script similar to the following as the system DBA.

```
-- Create tablespace and a user for warehouse
CREATE TABLESPACE idm_warehouse_ts
  DATAFILE 'D:/Oracle/warehouse/idm_warehouse.dbf' SIZE 10M
  AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 10M
  DEFAULT STORAGE (INITIAL 10M NEXT 10M);
CREATE USER idm_warehouse IDENTIFIED BY idm_warehouse
  DEFAULT TABLESPACE idm_warehouse_ts
  QUOTA UNLIMITED ON idm_warehouse_ts;
GRANT CREATE SESSION to idm_warehouse;
```

To load the DDL, execute the following command

```
sqlplus idm_warehouse/idm_warehouse@idm_warehouse < create_warehouse.oracle
```

SQL Server

Execute a script similar to the following as the system DBA. Uncomment lines as necessary.

```
CREATE DATABASE idm_warehouse
GO
--For SQL Server authentication:
-- sp_addlogin user, password, defaultdb--For Windows authentication:
-- sp_grantlogin <domain\user>
--For SQL Server 2005:
--CREATE LOGIN idm_warehouse WITH PASSWORD = 'idm_warehouse', DEFAULT_DATABASE = idm_warehouse sp_addlogin
'idm_warehouse', 'idm_warehouse', 'idm_warehouse'
USE idm_warehouse
GO
--For SQL Server 2005 SP2 create a schema - not needed in other versions:
--CREATE SCHEMA idm_warehouse
--GO
--For SQL Server 2005 SP2 use CREATE user instead of sp_grantdbaccess
--CREATE USER idm_warehouse FOR LOGIN idm_warehouse with DEFAULT_SCHEMA = idm_warehouse
sp_grantdbaccess 'idm_warehouse'
GO
```

To load the DDL, execute the following command:

```
osql -d idm_warehouse -U idm_warehouse -P idm_warehouse < create_warehouse.sqlserver
```

Upgrading Data Exporter

Data Exporter provides the means to periodically export data that is managed or has been processed by Identity Manager to a set of DBMS tables for further processing. The export process is intentionally open to customizations, some of which may require manual intervention for the proper behavior. The Identity Manager configuration objects that are relevant to Data Exporter are preserved and updated appropriately. However, some exporter customization is done to files within the web application, and these take special handling.

During the upgrade process, Identity Manager overwrites all unmodified Data Exporter files in the `$WSHOME` and `$WSHOME/exporter` directories. If you made changes to any Data Exporter files, then the upgrade process leaves your modified version in place and installs the newer version of the file in `$WSHOME/patches/Identity_Manager_8_1_0_0_Date/filesNotInstalled`. If you want to merge the new functionality with your customizations, you must do this manually.

Note that the following files in `$WSHOME` are often customized:

```
model-export.dtd
model-export.xml
model-export.xsl
exporter/exporter.jar
exporter/create_warehouse.*
exporter/drop_warehouse.*
exporter/hbm/*.hbm.xml
```

The upgrade steps you must perform vary depending on whether you customized Data Exporter in 8.0 and your plans for Data Exporter in 8.1

- If you customized Data Exporter for 8.0 and want to implement the 8.1 features:
 1. Drop the warehouse schema.
 2. Upgrade Identity Manager.
 3. Recreate the schema with the new DDL in the `$WSHOME/exporter` directory.

There are no schema upgrade scripts that will allow the schema to be modified with data in place. Therefore, if you need to preserve the data, you must export and then import the data. The 8.1 warehouse schema is table and field compatible with the previous version, although 8.1 added new tables and new fields to existing tables. The field order was also changed. As a result, your export needs to be a data-only export, not a DDL and data export.

4. Merge customizations with the new 8.1 exporter files. If `model-export.xml` was customized, rebuild the `exporter.jar` file.
 5. Load the new warehouse schema.
- If you customized Data Exporter for 8.0 and you do not want to implement the 8.1 features:

You can upgrade to 8.1 without performing any additional steps. However, if you upgrade to 8.1 Exporter but do not upgrade the warehouse DDL, the Warehouse Configuration page displays an error message that indicates the EXT_ADMINGROUP table is missing. This is an indication that the new 8.1 objects are in place, but the old 8.0 warehouse DDL is still loaded.

- If you did not customize Data Exporter for 8.0 and do not plan to implement the 8.1 features:
 1. Drop the warehouse schema.
 2. Upgrade Identity Manager.
 3. Load the new warehouse schema.

Note – Data in the warehouse is left untouched. You do not need to change the DDL if `model-export.xml` was customized. If `model-export.xml` was not customized, then you must load the new DDL.

After 8.1 is installed, if the 8.1 version of `model-export.xml` is in place, you can see the new data types and attributes by looking at the schema file at `http://server:port/idm/model-export.xml`. New types and attributes are flagged with the 8.1 release number.

Customizing Data Exporter

Data exporting has two levels of schema in effect, the internal (ObjectClass) and the external (Export) schemas. These schemas provide a data “interface” that can be proven to be compliant over multiple releases of the Identity Manager. Compliant means that the attribute names, data types, and data meanings will not change. An attribute may be removed, but the attribute name cannot be re-used to mean something different. Attributes may be added at any time. A compliant schema allows reports to be written against a version of the schema and run without modification against any later version.

The ObjectClass schema tells programs in the Identity Manager server what the data should look like, while the external schema tells the warehouse what the data should look like. The internal schema will vary from release to release, but the external schema will stay compliant across releases.

Identity Manager ObjectClass Schema

The ObjectClass schema can be extended for User and Role types, but otherwise cannot be changed. The ObjectClass schema is used by programs executing on the Identity Manager servers to provide access to the data objects themselves. This schema is compiled into Identity Manager and represents the data that is stored and operated on within Identity Manager.

This schema may change between versions of Identity Manager, but is abstract to the data warehouse because of the export schema. The ObjectClass schema provides a schema abstraction on top of the Identity Manager Persistent Object layer, which are the data objects stored in the Identity Manager repository.

Custom User and Role attributes, also known as extended attributes, are defined in the IDMSchemaConfiguration object. See [Chapter 10, “Editing Configuration Objects,”](#) for information about adding extended attributes to the ObjectClass schema.

Export Schema

The export schema defines what data can be written to the warehouse. By default, it is limited to a subset of the ObjectClass schema, although the difference between the two is very small. The ObjectClass schema is represented by Java objects, but the export schema must have a bi-directional mapping between Java objects and RDBMS tables.

After you have added an extended attribute to the IDMSchemaConfiguration object, you must define the same attribute in the export schema, which is defined in the `$WSHOME/model-export.xml` file. Locate the Role or User model in this file and add a `field` element that defines the attribute. The `field` element can contain the following parameters.

TABLE 5-2 Export attribute parameters

Parameter	Description
<code>name</code>	The name of the attribute. This value must match the name assigned in the IDMSchemaConfiguration object.
<code>type</code>	The data type of the attribute. You must specify the full Java class name, such as <code>java.lang.String</code> or <code>java.util.List</code> .
<code>introduced</code>	Optional. Specifies the release that the attribute was added to the schema.
<code>friendlyName</code>	The label that is displayed on the Data Exporter configuration pages.
<code>elementType</code>	If the <code>type</code> parameter is <code>java.util.List</code> , then this parameter specifies the data type of the items in the list. Common values include <code>java.lang.String</code> and <code>com.sun.idm.object.ReferenceBean</code> .
<code>referenceType</code>	If the <code>elementType</code> parameter is <code>com.sun.idm.object.ReferenceBean</code> , then this parameter references to another Identity Manager object or pseudo-object.
<code>forensic</code>	Indicates the attribute is used to determine relationships. Possible values are <code>User</code> and <code>Role</code> .

TABLE 5-2 Export attribute parameters (Continued)

Parameter	Description
exported	When set to false, the attribute is not exported. If you want to hide a default attribute from the Data Exporter data type configuration page, add <code>exported='false'</code> to the attribute definition. You must create a custom WIC library to be able to export an attribute in the default schema that has exporting disabled.
queryable	When set to false, the field is not available for forensic queries.
max-length	The maximum length of a value.

The following example adds an extended attribute named `telno` to the export schema as part of the User model:

```
<field name='telno'
  type='java.lang.String'
  introduced='8.0'
  max-length='20'
  friendlyName='Telephone Number'>
  <description>The phone number assigned to the user.</description>
</field>
```

Modifying the Warehouse Interface Code

The Warehouse Interface Code (WIC) is provided in binary and source form in Identity Manager. Many deployments will be able to use the WIC code in binary form (no modifications), but some deployments may want to make other changes. The WIC code must implement two interfaces to be used for exporting, and a third interface to be used by the Forensic Query interface.

The default WIC implementation writes to a set of RDBMS tables. For many applications this is sufficient, but you could create custom WIC code to write the data to a JMS queue or to some other consumer.

The `com.sun.idm.exporter.Factory` and `com.sun.idm.exporter.Exporter` classes are used to export data. The export code is responsible for converting models (Java data objects) to a form suitable for storage. Typically, this means writing to a relational database. As a result, the WIC code is responsible for Object to Relational transformation.

The default WIC implementation uses Hibernate to provide the Object/Relational mapping. This mapping is controlled by the Hibernate `.hbm.xml` mapping files, which are in turn generated based on the export schema. Hibernate prefers to use a Java bean-style data object for its work, and has various get and set methods to accomplish this. The WIC code generates the corresponding Bean and hibernate files that match the export schema. If Hibernate provides the necessary mapping features, there may be no need to modify any WIC code manually.

The WIC files are located in the *InstallationDirectory*/REF/exporter directory.

Generating a New Factory Class

Identity Manager allows you to add custom User and Role attributes to the ObjectClass schema. These attributes, known as extended attributes, cannot be exported unless you also add them to the export schema, regenerate the Warehouse Interface Code (WIC), and deploy the code.

When extended attributes are added, you will need to edit the export schema control file and add the attributes. If attributes are to be excluded from the exporter, then you can simply mark the schema fields with `exported='false'` and regenerate the WIC code.

To modify the WIC code you will need the following installed on your system

- An installation of Identity Manager
- Java 1.5 SDK
- ant 1.7 (or later)
- A text editor

The steps required to export extended attributes are as follows:

▼ To Export Extended Attributes

- 1 **Get the WIC source code from the REF kit**
- 2 **Set the WSHOME environment variable to the installation directory of Identity Manager**
- 3 **Back-up the export schema control file `$WSHOME/model-export.xml` then edit it.**
- 4 **Change directories to the WIC source top-level directory. This directory should contain files named `build.xml`, `BeanGenerator.java`, and `HbmGenerator.java`.**
- 5 **Stop the application server.**
- 6 **Remove CLASSPATH from the environment.**

Note – You must remove CLASSPATH from the environment before performing executing ant rebuild in the next step.

- 7 **Rebuild the WIC code with the ant `rebuild` command.**
- 8 **Deploy the modified WIC code to the application server with the ant `deploy` command.**
- 9 **Restart the application server.**

Note – If you change `model-export.xml` and rebuild the WIC as shown in the preceding steps, a new warehouse DDL is generated. You must drop the old tables and load the new DDL, which deletes any data that is already in the tables.

Adding Localization Support for the WIC

The export schema contains numerous strings that are displayed on the Data Exporter Type Configuration pages. Use the following procedure to display the strings in a language that is not officially supported:

▼ To Add Localization Support for the WIC

- 1 **Extract the contents of the `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib/wicmessages.jar` file.**
- 2 **Navigate to the `com/sun/idm/warehouse/msgcat` directory.**
- 3 **Translate the contents of `WICMessages.properties` file. Make sure the final results are saved in a file that contains the locale.**

You do not need to save the message catalog to the System Configuration object.

Troubleshooting Data Exporter

The volume and variety of data flowing through the exporter increase the possibility of problems occurring during data export.

Beans and Other Tools

Data Exporter performance and throughput can be monitored through the JMX management beans provided in Identity Manager. To minimize the performance impact of exporting data, Identity Manager uses some memory-based queues that are volatile. If the server terminates unexpectedly, the data in these queues will be lost. You can monitor the size of these queues over a period of time to judge your exposure to this risk.

Model Serialization Limits

Data Exporter must queue some objects to ensure they are available for export at the appropriate time. Queuing these objects is done by Java serialization. However, it is possible to include data in an exported object that is not serializable. In this case, the exporter code should detect the non-serializable data and replace it with tokens that indicate the problem, allowing the rest of the object to be exported.

Repository Polling Configuration

Each type may specify an independent export cycle. The administrator interface provides an easy way to define the simpler cycles which will be sufficient for most purposes. However, the export cycles can also be specified in the native cron style, which supports even more flexibility.

Tracing and Logging

The default WIC code uses Hibernate to provide object/RDBMS mapping for the exported data objects, but using the Hibernate library means the tracing and logging is not fully integrated. The actual WIC code can be traced by using the `com.sun.idm.warehouse.*` package. However, enabling Hibernate logging requires a different technique.

To pass a Hibernate property to the code that initiates the Hibernate sessions, add an attribute to the `DatabaseConnection` configuration object. You must prefix the attribute name with an “X”. For example, if the native property name is `hibernate.show_sql`, you must define it in the configuration object as `Xhibernate.show_sql`. The following example causes Hibernate to print any generated SQL to the application server’s standard output.

```
<Attribute name='Xhibernate.show_sql' value='true'>
```

By default, Hibernate uses C3P0 for connection pooling. C3P0 uses the `java.logging` facility for its logging, which is controlled by the `$JRE/lib/logging.properties` file.

Configuring User Actions

This chapter details how to add custom tasks to the Identity Manager Administrator Interface and configure user actions that you can execute from two areas of the interface:

- User Account Search Results page
- User applet on the Accounts page

Note – To add a custom task, you must edit an existing `TaskDefinition`. You can use the Identity Manager IDE to view and edit task definitions. Instructions for installing and configuring the Identity Manager IDE are provided on <https://identitymanageride.dev.java.net>.

Adding Custom Tasks

Follow these general steps to add custom tasks:

- Set up authorization for the task
- Add the task to the repository

Setting Up Custom Task Authorization

Typically, you set authorization for custom tasks to restrict access to the task to a certain set of administrators.

▼ To Set Up Authorization

- 1 Add a new authorization type (`AuthType`) to the repository for the task
- 2 Create a new `AdminGroup` (capability) for the task
- 3 Grant the new capability to one or more administrators

Step 1: Create an AuthType

The new authorization type you create should extend the existing `TaskDefinition`, `TaskInstance`, and `TaskTemplate` AuthTypes. To add the authorization type, edit the Authorization Types Configuration object in the repository and add a new authorization type element for your task.

Use the `<AuthType>` element to create a new authorization type. This element has one required property: `name`. The example below displays the correct syntax for an `<AuthType>` element.

After creating the authorization type, you must edit the Authorization Types Configuration object in the repository, and add the new `<AuthType>` element.

The following example shows how to add a custom task to move multiple users into a new organization.

EXAMPLE 6-1 Moving Multiple Users into a New Organization

```
<Configuration name='AuthorizationTypes'>
  <Extension>
    <AuthTypes>
      <AuthType name='Move User' extends='TaskDefinition,TaskInstance,TaskTemplate' />
    </AuthTypes>
  </Extension>
</Configuration>
```

Step 2: Create an AdminGroup

Next, create an `AdminGroup` that grants `Right.VIEW` for the newly created `AuthType`. To do this, you must create an XML file with the new administrator group, and then import it into the Identity Manager repository.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Waveset PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Waveset>
  <AdminGroup name='Move User' protected='true' description='UI_ADMINGROUP_MOVE_USER_DESCRIPTION'
  displayName='UI_ADMINGROUP_MOVE_USER' >
    <Permissions>
      <Permission type='Move User' rights='View' />
    </Permissions>
    <MemberObjectGroups>
      <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#All' name='All' />
    </MemberObjectGroups>
  </AdminGroup>
</Waveset>
```

The `displayName` and `description` attributes are message catalog keys. If these are not found in a message catalog, they are displayed as they are found in the attributes. If message catalog keys are used, you must add the messages either into `WPMessages.properties` or a custom message catalog.

Step 3: Grant Capabilities to Administrators

Finally, you must grant administrators access to execute the newly defined task. You can accomplish this in one of two ways:

- Directly assign the new capability.
- Add the new capability to an Admin Role (either directly or by using a capabilities rule), and then assign it.

Adding a Task to the Repository

After you set up task authorization, you can add the task to the repository. The task is a typical `TaskDefinition` that can be defined through the Sun Identity Manager Integrated Development Environment or imported as XML. For example, a task to change the organization for multiple users would resemble the following example (which is included in the `samples` directory).

EXAMPLE 6-2 Changing the Organization for Multiple Users

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE TaskDefinition PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<!-- MemberObjectGroups="#ID#Top" authType="Move User" name="Change Organizations"
taskType="Workflow" visibility="runschedule"-->
<TaskDefinition authType='MoveUser' name='Change Organizations' taskType='Workflow'
executor='com.waveset.workflow.WorkflowExecutor' suspendable='true' syncControlAllowed='true' execMode='sync'
execLimit='0' resultLimit='0' resultOption='delete' visibility='runschedule' progressInterval='0'>
  <Form name='Change Organization Form' title='Change Organization Form'>
    <Display class='EditForm'/>
    <Include>
      <ObjectRef type='UserForm' name='User Library'/>
      <ObjectRef type='UserForm' name='Organization Library'/>
    </Include>
    <FieldRef name='namesList'/>
    <FieldRef name='orgsList'/>
    <FieldRef name='waveset.organization'/>
  </Form>
<Extension>
  <WFProcess name='Change Organizations' title='Change Organizations'>
    <Variable name='waveset.organization'/>
    <Variable name='userObjectIds' input='true'>
      <Comments>The names of the accounts to change the organization on.</Comments>
    </Variable>
  </WFProcess>
</Extension>
</TaskDefinition>
```

EXAMPLE 6-2 Changing the Organization for Multiple Users (Continued)

```

</Variable>
<Activity id='0' name='start'>
  <ReportTitle>
    <s>start</s>
  </ReportTitle>
  <Transition to='Process Org Moves'/>
</Activity>
<Activity id='1' name='Process Org Moves'>
  <Action id='0' process='Move User'>
    <Iterate for='currentAccount' in='userObjectIds'/>
    <Argument name='userId' value='${currentAccount}'/>
    <Argument name='organizationId' value='${waveset.organization}'/>
  </Action>
  <Transition to='end'/>
</Activity>
<Activity id='2' name='end'/>
</WFProcess>
</Extension>
<MemberObjectGroups>
  <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#Top' name='Top'/>
</MemberObjectGroups>
</TaskDefinition>

```

Note these features of the preceding example:

- The task's `authType` attribute is set to `Move User`. This will restrict access to this task to users that are assigned the capability to execute this authorization type.
- The form contains `FieldRefs` to `namesList` and `orgsList`. These fields are defined in the User Library and Organization Library, respectively. Including these fields will display lists of the names of all selected users and all selected organizations. *For potentially dangerous tasks, you should include one or both of these fields so the user is aware of the potential effects of running the task.*
- The task has an input variable named `userObjectIds`. This variable contains a list of the names or IDs of the users selected in the User Account Search Results page or in the user applet on the Accounts page. Iterate over this variable to perform the desired action on all selected users.

The following table lists the variables that are available for input to the task.

TABLE 6-1 Task Variables

Variable	Description
userObjectIds	List of IDs of the selected users. Available from the User Account Search Results and Accounts pages. When invoked from the User Account Search Results page, this list contains the names of the selected users.
userNames	List of names of the selected users. Available from the User Account Search Results and Accounts pages.
orgObjectIds	A List of IDs of the selected organizations. Available only from the Accounts page.
orgNames	A List of names of the selected organizations. Available only from the Accounts page.

To enable this workflow, you must also add to the repository a sub-process to change a user's organization, as shown in the following example.

EXAMPLE 6-3 Changing a User's Organization

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<!-- MemberObjectGroups="#ID#Top" configType="WFProcess" name="Move User"-->
<Configuration name='Move User' createDate='1083353996807'>
  <Extension>
    <WFProcess name='Move User' title='Move User'>
      <Variable name='userId' input='true'>
        <Comments>The accountId of the user to move.</Comments>
      </Variable>
      <Variable name='organizationId' input='true'>
        <Comments>The ID of the organization to move the user into.</Comments>
      </Variable>
      <Activity id='0' name='Start'>
        <Transition to='Update Organization' />
      </Activity>
      <Activity id='1' name='Update Organization'>
        <Action id='0' process='Update User View'>
          <Argument name='accountId' value='${userId}' />
          <Argument name='updates'>
            <map>
              <s>waveset.organization</s>
              <ref>organizationId</ref>
            </map>
          </Argument>
        </Action>
        <Transition to='End' />
      </Activity>
      <Activity id='2' name='End' />
    </WFProcess>
  </Extension>
</Configuration>
```

EXAMPLE 6-3 Changing a User's Organization *(Continued)*

```
</Extension>
<MemberObjectGroups>
  <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' id='#ID#Top' name='Top' />
</MemberObjectGroups>
</Configuration>
```

Configuring User Actions

You must configure definitions for the buttons and actions menu selections that initiate custom actions. Definitions for the buttons and actions menu items that appear on the User Account Search Results and Accounts pages are contained in the User Actions Configuration configuration object.

Do not directly edit the User Actions Configuration object. Rather, best practice for configuring user actions is to:

- Copy the User Actions Configuration configuration object into a new configuration object.
- Modify the System Configuration object to point to the new configuration object.

▼ To Configure User Actions

- 1 Copy the User Actions Configuration configuration object into a new XML file.
- 2 Change the name of the new object to My User Actions Configuration.
- 3 Make any desired modifications to My User Actions Configuration.
- 4 Import the XML file into Identity Manager from the Import Exchange File page
- 5 Modify SystemConfiguration to change the userActionsConfigMapping attribute's value to My User Actions Configuration

The configuration object consists of these configuration sections.

Attribute	Description
findUsersButtons	Contains a list of button definitions for the Administrator Interface User Account Search Results page.

Attribute	Description
<code>userApplet.userMenu</code>	Contains a list of menu item definitions for the user actions menu. This menu displays when you right-click a user in the applet on the Administrator Interface Accounts page.
<code>userApplet.organizationMenu</code>	Contains a list of menu item definitions for the organization actions menu. This menu displays when you right-click an organization in the applet on the Accounts page.

Each section contains a list of user actions to display in the interface. The button and menu configuration items have the same basic properties. Both include several extensions unique to the interface.

The following excerpt is an example of the user action configuration customized to add the Change Organization task to each list.

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Waveset PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Waveset>

<Configuration name='My User Actions Configuration'>
  <Extension>
    <Object>
      <!-- Buttons for the find users results page. -->
      <Attribute name='findUsersButtons'>
        <List>
          <Object>
            <Attribute name='textKey' value='UI_NEW_LABEL' />
            <Attribute name='commandName' value='New' />
            <Attribute name='requiredPermission'>
              <Object>
                <Attribute name='objectType' value='User' />
                <Attribute name='rights' value='Create' />
              </Object>
            </Attribute>
            <Attribute name='alwaysDisplay' value='true' />
          </Object>
          ...
          <Object>
            <Attribute name='textKey' value='UI_CHANGE_ORGANIZATIONS_LABEL' />
            <Attribute name='commandName'
value='Change Organizations' />
          </Object>
        </List>
      </Attribute>
      <Attribute name='userApplet'>
        <Object>
          <!-- The menu to display when a user is selected. -->
```

```

    <Attribute name='userMenu'>
      <List>
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='textKey'
value='UI_ACCT_JAVA_MENU_NEW_ORG' />
          <Attribute name='commandName'
value='New Organization' />
          <Attribute name='requiredPermission'>
            <Object>
              <Attribute name='objectType' value='ObjectGroup' />
              <Attribute name='rights' value='Create' />
            </Object>
          </Attribute>
        </Object>
        ...
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='separator' value='separator' />
        </Object>
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='textKey'
value='UI_CHANGE_ORGANIZATIONS_MENU_LABEL' />
          <Attribute name='commandName'
value='Change Organizations' />
        </Object>
      </List>
    </Attribute>
    <!-- The menu to display when an organization is selected. -->
    <Attribute name='organizationMenu'>
      <List>
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='textKey'
value='UI_ACCT_JAVA_MENU_NEW_JUNCTION' />
          <Attribute name='commandName'
value='New Directory Junction' />
          <Attribute name='requiredPermission'>
            <Object>
              <Attribute name='objectType' value='ObjectGroup' />
              <Attribute name='rights' value='Create' />
            </Object>
          </Attribute>
          <Attribute name='orgTypes' value='normal,dynamic' />
        </Object>
        ...
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='separator' value='separator' />
        </Object>
        <Object>
          <Attribute name='textKey'

```

```

value='UI_CHANGE_ORGANIZATIONS_MENU_LABEL' />
    <Attribute name='commandName'
value='Change Organizations' />
    </Object>
  </List>
</Attribute>
</Object>
</Attribute>
</Object>
</Extension>
<MemberObjectGroups>
  <ObjectRef type='ObjectGroup' name='All' />
</MemberObjectGroups>
</Configuration>
</Waveset>

```

User action definitions support these core attributes.

Attribute	Description
textKey	Message catalog key for the text of the button or menu item.
commandName	Name of the command to execute. This can be a command that is natively supported (such as New or Delete User), or the name of a <code>TaskDefinition</code> to execute.
requiredPermission. objectType	Type of object that the rights are required on in order to display this item. This is applicable only for natively supported commands. Task Definitions should use <code>AuthTypes</code> for controlling access.
requiredPermission.rights	Comma-separated list of <code>Right</code> names required on the specified <code>objectType</code> to display this item. This is applicable only for natively supported commands. Task Definitions should use <code>AuthTypes</code> for controlling access.
alwaysDisplay	Optional. Specifies whether to always display this button. If set to a value of <code>true</code> , the button is displayed even if user search returns no results. The default value for this attribute is <code>false</code> .
	Applies to <code>findUsersButtons</code> section only.

User actions definitions in the `userApplet` section also support the attributes in the following table.

Attribute	Description
orgTypes	<p>Comma-separated list of organization types for which to display the item in the organization menu. Possible values are normal, dynamic, and virtual for normal organizations, dynamic organizations, and virtual organizations, respectively.</p> <p>If this attribute is not specified, the menu item is displayed for all organization types.</p>
separator	<p>Special item in the format <code><Object><Attribute name='separator' value='separator'/></Object></code>. Separators are displayed as horizontal bars in the Administrator Interface menus, and cannot be selected.</p>

Private Labeling of Identity Manager

This chapter identifies the basic components you will need to rebrand the Identity Manager interface to match your company’s intranet or corporate style guidelines. *Private labeling* is the customization of the interface to meet these corporate guidelines.

Private Labeling Tasks

There are several general categories of private labeling tasks:

- **Changing default header content by incorporating** your corporate logo, changing default text, and altering colors in both the User and Administrator interfaces.
- **Changing display fonts and component colors** throughout the application through the use of a style sheet located in `styles\customStyle.css`.
- **Changing default text** throughout the application by creating your own message catalog.
- **Changing Identity Manager behavior on commonly used pages** by editing the System Configuration object. These tasks, which include disabling the **Forgot Your Password?** button, are frequently performed by users while rebranding the product interface.

Architectural Features

Private labeling includes editing the components listed in the following table.

TABLE 7-1 Customizable Components

Component	Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/styles/customStyle.css</code>	Administrator and User
<code>\$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib/idmcommon.jar</code>	Administrator and User

TABLE 7-1 Customizable Components (Continued)

Component	Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/user/userFooter_beforeFirstTableRowTag.jsp</code>	User Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/user/userFooter_beforeEndBodyTag.jsp</code>	User Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/user/userFooter_beforeLastEndTableRowTag.jsp</code>	User Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/includes/bodyEnd_beforeFirstTableRowTag.jsp</code>	Administrator Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/includes/bodyEnd_beforeEndBodyTag.jsp</code>	Administrator Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/includes/bodyEnd_beforeLastEndTableRowTag.jsp</code>	Administrator Interface
<code>\$WSHOME/index_quickLinks.jsp</code>	Administrator and User

Style Sheets

Four *style sheets* affect the display characteristics of text in the product interface:

- `lockhart.css`. Contains Sun corporate interface styles for web applications.
- `style.css`. Defines the display attributes of pages throughout both interfaces. This file also controls the images contained in the headers.
- `customStyle.css`. Contains any changes to the default settings contained in `style.css` and `lockhart.css`. Settings in this file override the settings in `style.css` and `lockhart.css`. Customers should not edit the preceding files, but instead put their customizations into `customStyle.css`.
- `Style-Help.css`. Defines style classes used in online help and pop-up help (i-Help).

Default Text

Default text occurs throughout the product interface in the following:

- Form titles, subtitles, buttons, odd and even rows, section heads
- General text
- Warning messages
- Navigation button text, including both available and selected navigation buttons
- Table header/body text

Text Attributes

Display attributes include

- title: font-family, font-size, font-weight, color
- button: text-alignment, background-color
- text: same as title, text-decoration, white-space

Default Style Settings

The `$WSHOME/styles/style.css` and `lockhart.css` files contains default style settings. Do not edit these files.

Customized File

The `customStyle.css` file contains customizations and is not overwritten during product upgrades. Settings defined there will override the default settings in `style.css` and `lockhart.css`. *Include all your customizations in `customStyle.css`.*

JSP Files

Several JSP files contain the default settings for headers: `userHeader.jsp`, `bodyEnd.jsp`, and `bodyStart.jsp`. Do not edit these files. Instead, to preserve your customizations during product upgrade, edit only the JSPs listed in [“Architectural Features” on page 115](#).

WPMessages_en.properties File

The `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib/idmcommon.jar` file contains the message catalog entries that you can extract into a `WPMessages_en.properties` file for editing.

Customizing Headers

Customization tasks are identical for both interfaces, although you must edit different files.

Note – Avoid editing any .jsp file other than the specified files. If you must edit one, first back up the .jsp to a safe location before copying, editing, and renaming it.

Changing Header Appearance

The most typical labeling tasks involve

- Changing the image referenced in the header section of the page from the default Sun logo to corporate standards. Replace or remove images by editing `customStyle.css`.
- Suppressing the Identity Manager logo.
- Using corporate internal look and feel guidelines, specifically borders, header, and background colors.
- Changing “logged in as ...” text. You cannot change this through `.jspx`s. You can edit a custom message catalog. See [“Changing Default Information Displayed in the Identity Manager User Interface Home Page”](#) on page 121.

Customizing Identity Manager Pages

Typical customizations include:

- Creating a custom message catalog
- Customizing the home page
- Changing Default Strings in the Identity Manager User Interface Home Page

Creating a Custom Message Catalog

You must create a custom message catalog to override any string that is defined in the default message catalog. For example, if you want to rename Identity Manager, you must create a custom catalog and change the following definition:

```
PRODUCT_NAME=Identity Manager
```

The following entries also control the display of the product name:

```
LIGHTHOUSE_DISPLAY_NAME=[PRODUCT_NAME]  
LIGHTHOUSE_TYPE_DISPLAY_NAME=[PRODUCT_NAME]  
LIGHTHOUSE_DEFAULT_POLICY=Default [PRODUCT_NAME] Account Policy
```

See [Chapter 8, “Customizing Message Catalogs,”](#) for detailed information about creating a message catalog.

Customizing the Home Page

- [“Adding a List of Quick Links”](#) on page 119
- [“Changing the Default “Logged in as” Text”](#) on page 119
- [“Changing Page Title and Subtitle”](#) on page 119
- [“Changing Background Image on the Login Page”](#) on page 120
- [“Customizing the Browser Title Bar”](#) on page 120

Adding a List of Quick Links

A typical customization to the home page involves adding a custom list of links to tasks or resources that users frequently access in your environment. These quick links offer a shortcut through the product interface to frequent destinations.

▼ To Add a List of Quick Links

- 1 Add links to the list in `index_quickLinks.jsp`.
- 2 Uncomment the list section by removing the surrounding `<%-- and --%>` tags.
- 3 Save the file. You do not need to restart your application server.

Changing the Default “Logged in as” Text

▼ To Change the Default Text

- 1 Imported the following XML file:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Configuration name='AltMsgCatalog'>
  <Extension>
    <CustomCatalog id='AltMsgCatalog' enabled='true'>
      <MessageSet language='en' country='US'>
        <Msg id='UI_BROWSER_TITLE_PROD_NAME_OVERRIDE'>Override Name</Msg>
      </MessageSet>
    </CustomCatalog>
  </Extension>
</Configuration>
```

- 2 Add the following line to the System Configuration object within the `<Configuration><Extension><Object>` element:


```
<Attribute name='customMessageCatalog' value='AltMsgCatalog' />
```

- 3 Add the following line:

```
<msg id='UI_NAV_FOOT_LOG'>mytext{0}</msg>
```

- 4 Save change and restart your application server.

Changing Page Title and Subtitle

To change the default Login page title and subtitle and welcome message, change the following entries in the custom message catalog:

- UI_LOGIN_TITLE
- UI_LOGIN_TITLE_TO_RESOURCE
- UI_LOGIN_WELCOME2

To change this text, follow the procedure for extracting and editing the `WPMessages_en.properties` file detailed in [“Changing the Default “Logged in as” Text” on page 119](#).

The following text lists the default message catalog settings:

```
UI_LOGIN_IN_PROGRESS_TITLE=Log In (In Progress)
UI_LOGIN_CHALLENGE=Enter Your {0} Password
UI_LOGIN_CHALLENGE_INFO=You are required to enter the password you logged into
[PRODUCT_NAME] with before the requested action can be completed.
UI_LOGIN_TITLE_LONG=[PRODUCT_NAME] LogIn
UI_LOGIN_WELCOME=Welcome to the Sun [PRODUCT_NAME] system. Enter the requested
information, and then click <b>Login</b>.
UI_LOGIN_WELCOME2=Welcome to the Sun [PRODUCT_NAME] system. Enter your user ID and
password, and then click <b>Login</b>. If you can't remember your password, click
<b>Forgot Your Password?</b>
UI_LOGIN_TITLE=Log In UI_LOGIN_TITLE_TO_RESOURCE=Log In to <b>{0}</b>
```

Changing Background Image on the Login Page

You can change the background image by editing `customStyle.css` as follows:

```
div#loginFormDiv {
  background:
url(.../images/other/login-backimage2.jpg)
no-repeat;
  margin-left: -10px;
  padding: 0px 0px 280px;
  height: 435px;
```

Customizing the Browser Title Bar

You can now replace the product name string in the browser title bar with a localizable string of your choice.

▼ To Replace the Product Name String

1 Import the following XML file:

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Configuration name='AltMsgCatalog'>
  <Extension>
```

```

<CustomCatalog id='AltMsgCatalog' enabled='true'>
  <MessageSet language='en' country='US'>
    <Msg id='UI_BROWSER_TITLE_PROD_NAME_OVERRIDE'>Override Name</Msg>
  </MessageSet>
</CustomCatalog>
</Extension>
</Configuration>

```

- 2 Using the Identity Manager IDE, load the System Configuration object for editing. Add the following line inside the <Configuration><Extension><Object> element:

```
<Attribute name='customMessageCatalog' value='AltMsgCatalog' />
```

- 3 Also in the System Configuration object, you must change `ui.web.browserTitleProdNameOverride` to `true`.
- 4 Save this change to the System Configuration object, and restart your application server.

Changing Default Information Displayed in the Identity Manager User Interface Home Page

The Identity Manager User Interface home page provides a “dashboard” area that summarizes basic information about the logged-in account, including the default strings listed in the following table.

All attributes belong to the `ui.web.user.dashboard` object.

TABLE 7-2 Default Settings of `ui.web.user.dashboard` Object

Default Configuration Object Setting	Description
<code>displayLoginFailures</code>	Displays the number of unsuccessful password or authentication question login attempts if a maximum login attempts value has been configured in an account’s account policy.
<code>displayPasswordExpirationWarning</code>	Displays messages related to password expiration if password policy is applied to an account.
<code>displayApprovals</code> <code>displayAttestationReviews</code>	Enable the display of the following work item types for all users: Approvals, Attestations, Remediations, and Other.
<code>displayOtherWorkItems</code> <code>displayRemediations</code>	Note: Even if the configuration object is true for a particular type, the interface string may not appear based on the permissions granted to a user for his account.
<code>displayRequests</code>	Specifies the number of outstanding requests for role, group, or resource updates for an account

TABLE 7-2 Default Settings of `ui.web.user.dashboard` Object (Continued)

Default Configuration Object Setting	Description
<code>displayDelegations</code>	Displays a string that indicates that the user has defined an approval delegation. Options include <code>enabled</code> or <code>disabled</code> .

By default, the value of the preceding configuration objects is set to `true`, and these strings will appear in the Identity Manager User Interface. To suppress the display of any string, set it to `false` in the System Configuration object.

You can edit the System Configuration object through the Identity Manager IDE. For general information about the System Configuration object, see [Chapter 10, “Editing Configuration Objects”](#)

Changing the Appearance of the User Interface Navigation Menus

In the Identity Manager User Interface, the horizontal navigation bar is driven by the End User Navigation User form in `enduser.xml`. The `userHeader.jsp`, which is included in all Identity Manager User Interface pages, includes another JSP named `menuStart.jsp`. This JSP accesses two system configuration objects:

- `ui.web.user.showMenu`. Toggles the display of the navigation menu on and off. The default value is `true`.
- `ui.web.user.menuLayout`. Determines whether the menu is rendered as a horizontal navigation bar with tabs (the default value is `horizontal`) or as a vertical tree menu (`vertical`).

The CSS style classes that determine how the menu is rendered are defined in `style.css`.

Note – If you implement custom JavaScript functions in the end user navigation bar (tabs), you must use `endUserNavigation` to reference that form (for example, `document.forms['endUserNavigation'].elements`).

Changing Font Characteristics

Display attributes typically specify the following basic font display characteristics.

TABLE 7-3 Font-related Display Characteristics

Display Attribute	Description
family	For example, Helvetica or Arial
size	Specified in point size (for example, 14 point)
weight	Unspecified indicates normal weight. When specified, typically bold
color	Typically specified as black (title -- font-family, font-size, font-weight, color

Certain components can be further defined by additional characteristics. For example, buttons can be defined with a background color. The alignment of the text and button label is another characteristic.

Editing Font Characteristics

To edit, copy from `styles.css` and paste into `customStyle.css`. Then, modify the selected setting in `customStyle.css`.

Example Entry

The following entry represents the default settings for each page title:

```
.title {
    font-family: Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;
    font-size: 16pt;
    font-weight: bold;
    color: C;
```

Sample Labeling Exercises

The following example illustrates how to suppress the Identity Manager logo and reference a custom image in the masthead of the page. Consult the example files located in the `sample/rebranding` directory.

- Changing product name
- Changing masthead colors
- Changing navigation tab colors
- Changing Identity Manager behavior on commonly used pages

Replacing the Identity Manager Logo with a Custom Logo

To change the logo in the Administrator or User interfaces, copy the following snippets from `styles/style.css` into `customStyle.css` and replace the Identity Manager logo image with your `.image` file:

```
td.MstTdLogo {
    width: 31px;
    height: 55px;
    background: url(../images/other/logo.jpg) no-repeat 5px;
}

td.MstTdTtlProdNam {
    background: url(../images/other/xyz_masthead.jpg) no-repeat 10px 30px;
    padding:10px 10px 0px 10px;
    vertical-align:top;
    white-space:nowrap;
    height: 75px;
    width: 350px;
}
```

Note – For best results, create logo images between 50 and 60 pixels high.

Changing Masthead Appearance

▼ To Change the Appearance of Identity Manager

- 1 Edit the `styles/customStyle.css` file.
- 2 Copy the following sections from `styles.css` into `customStyle.css` and modify as appropriate.

```
MstDiv {background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);background-repeat:repeat-x;
background-position:left top;background-color:#000033}
.MstTblEnd {background: url(../images/other/dot.gif);background-color: #666;height: 1px;}
td.MstTblEndImg {
    background-color: #666;
    height: 1px;
    background: url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    font-size:1px;
}
td.MstTdLogo {
```

```

width: 31px;
height: 55px;
background: url(../images/other/logo.jpg) no-repeat 5px;
}
td.MstTdSep {
width: 1px;
height: 61px;
background: url(../images/other/dot.gif) no-repeat center;
}
td.MstTdTtlProdNam {
background: url(../images/other/xyz_masthead.jpg) no-repeat 10px 30px;
padding:10px 10px 0px 10px;
vertical-align:top;
white-space:nowrap;
height: 75px;
width: 350px;
}

```

Changing Navigation Tabs

This section describes how to customize the Identity Manager navigation bar.

Customizing the Identity Manager User Interface Navigation Bar

The Identity Manager User Interface implements a second XPRESS form that contains the navigation bar. This means that the rendered page has two <FORM> tags, each with a different name attribute:

```
<form name="endUserNavigation">
```

and

```
<form name="mainform">
```

When you insert JavaScript code into the Identity Manager User Interface navigation bar, be sure that you are referring the correct form. To do so, use the name attribute to specify which <FORM> tag you want to reference: `document.mainform` or `document.endUserNavigation`.

Customizing Navigation Links

Copy and edit the following code to customize the navigation links across the top of the page. Change the background-color to an appropriate color.

EXAMPLE 7-1 Customizing Navigation Links

```
* LEVEL 1 TABS */
.TabLvl1Div {
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left bottom;
    background-color:#333366;
    padding:6px 10px 0px;
}
a.TabLvl1Lnk:link, a.TabLvl1Lnk:visited {
    display:block;
    padding:4px 10px 3px;
    font: bold 0.95em sans-serif;
    color:#FFF;
    text-decoration:none;
    text-align:center;
}
table.TabLvl1Tbl td {
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left top;
    background-color:#666699;
    border:solid 1px #abab5;
}
table.TabLvl1Tbl td.TabLvl1TblSelTd {
    background-color:#9999CC;
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left bottom;
    border-bottom:none;
```

Changing Tab Panel Tabs

EXAMPLE 7-2 Changing Tab Panel Tabs Identity Manager

```
.
.TabLvl2Div {
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left bottom;
    background-color:#9999CC;
    padding:6px 0px 0px 10px
}
a.TabLvl2Lnk:link, a.TabLvl2Lnk:visited{
    display:block;
    padding:3px 6px 2px;
```

EXAMPLE 7-2 Changing Tab Panel Tabs Identity Manager (Continued)

```

        font: 0.8em sans-serif;
        color:#333;
        text-decoration:none;
        text-align:center;
    }
table.TabLvl2Tbl div.TabLvl2SelTxt {
    display:block;
    padding:3px 6px 2px;
    font: 0.8em sans-serif;
    color:#333;
    font-weight:normal;
    text-align:center;
}
table.TabLvl2Tbl td {
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left top;
    background-color:#CCCCFF;
    border:solid 1px #aba1b5;
}
table.TabLvl2Tbl td.TabLvl2TblSelTd {
    border-bottom:none;
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
    background-repeat:repeat-x;
    background-position:left bottom;
    background-color:#FFF;
    border-left:solid 1px #aba1b5;
    border-right:solid 1px #aba1b5;
    border-top:solid 1px #aba1b5;

table.Tab2TblNew td {
background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
background-repeat:repeat-x;
background-position:left top;
background-color:#CCCCFF;
border:solid 1px #8f989f
}
table.Tab2TblNew td.Tab2TblSelTd {
border-bottom:none;
background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);
background-repeat:repeat-x;
background-position:left bottom;
background-color:#FFF;
border-left:solid 1px #8f989f;
border-right:solid 1px #8f989f;
border-top:solid 1px #8f989f

```

EXAMPLE 7-2 Changing Tab Panel Tabs Identity Manager (Continued)

```
}
```

Changing Sorting Table Header

```
.tablehdr {  
    background-image: url(../images/other/dot.gif);  
    background-repeat: repeat-x;  
    background-position: left bottom;  
    background-color: #9999CC;  
}
```

Changing User / Resource Table Component

EXAMPLE 7-3 Changing User / Resource Table Component

```
.tablesorthdr {  
    /*background-color: #BEC7CC;*/  
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);  
    background-repeat:repeat-x;  
    background-position:left bottom;  
    background-color:#CCCCFF;  
    border:solid 1px #aba1b5;  
}  
  
.treeContentLayout {  
    background-color: #9999CC;  
}  
  
.treeBaseRow {  
    padding-top: 0px;  
    padding-left: 10px;  
    padding-right: 10px;  
    padding-bottom: 0px;  
    background-color: #fff;  
    border-left: solid 1px #8F989F;  
    border-right: solid 1px #8F989F;  
    border-bottom: solid 1px #8F989F;  
}  
  
.treeButtonCell {  
    background-image:url(../images/other/dot.gif);  
    background-color:#666699;  
    color: #fff;
```

EXAMPLE 7-3 Changing User / Resource Table Component (Continued)

```

}

}

.treeMastHeadRow {
    background-color: #333366;
}

.treeMastHeadRow {
    background-color: #333366;
}

.treeMastHeadText {
    background-color: #333366;
    background-image: url(../images/other/dot.gif);
}

```

You can customize many other options (including text style and size, alignment, and the colors and configurations of other objects) by following the same procedures.

Note – To see the changes without rebooting your server or browser, perform a Ctrl-Refresh on a page.

Changing Identity Manager Behavior on Commonly Used Pages

You can customize many commonly altered properties of the User or Administrator interfaces can by editing the System Configuration object. The attribute `<Attribute name='ui'>` and its subobjects control the product interface. Modifying the attributes under this attribute can change the behavior of Identity Manager.

Miscellaneous Modifications: Admin Section of File

The admin section of System Configuration object file contains several attributes that are related to the Administrator Interface.

- To disable the **Forgot Your Password?** button on the Administrator login page, set `disableForgotPassword` to true.
- Setting `suppressHostName` to true will suppress the display of the hostname for processes on the Task Details page.

EXAMPLE 7-4 Modifying the Admin Section of a File

```

<Attribute name='admin'>
  <Object>
    <Attribute name='disableForgotPassword'>
      <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
    </Attribute>
    <Attribute name='workflowResults'>
      <Object>
        <Attribute name='suppressHostName'>
          <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
        </Attribute>
      </Object>
    </Attribute>
  </Object>
</Attribute>

```

Miscellaneous Changes: User Section of the File

The user section of the System Configuration object file includes options for the User Interface.

Disable the **Forgot Your Password?** button by setting `disableForgotPassword` to `true`.

The `workflowResults` attribute contains attributes for customizing the display of workflows for non-administrative users, as indicated below.

TABLE 7-4 Attributes for Customizing Workflows for Non-Administrative Users

Attribute	Description
<code>anonSuppressReports</code>	Controls whether the workflow diagram is displayed in the anonymous user workflow status pages (<code>anonProcessStatus.jsp</code>).
<code>suppressHostName</code>	Controls whether the hostname is included in workflow status pages for end-users (<code>processStatus.jsp</code>).
<code>suppressReports</code>	Controls whether workflow diagrams is displayed to all non-anonymous users (<code>processStatus.jsp</code>).

EXAMPLE 7-5 Customizing Workflows for Non-Administrative Users

```

<Attribute name='user'>
  <Object>
    <Attribute name='disableForgotPassword'>
      <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
    </Attribute>
    <Attribute name='workflowResults'>
      <Object>
        <Attribute name='anonSuppressReports'>

```

EXAMPLE 7-5 Customizing Workflows for Non-Administrative Users (Continued)

```
        <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
      </Attribute>
      <Attribute name='suppressHostName'>
        <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
      </Attribute>
      <Attribute name='suppressReports'>
        <Boolean>>false</Boolean>
      </Attribute>
    </Object>
  </Attribute>
</Object>
</Attribute>
```

To block the display of password and authentication question answers, set `obfuscateAnswers` to `true`. This setting causes answers to be displayed as asterisks in both the Administrator Interface and User Interface.

```
<Attribute name="obfuscateAnswers">
  <Boolean>>true</Boolean>
</Attribute>
```


Customizing Message Catalogs

To add message catalog entries or modify entries provided with the system, you can create a customized message catalog.

Advantages of Custom Message Catalogs

Custom message catalogs provide the following benefits:

- Reduced maintenance in a clustered environment. Maintaining a separate message catalog means that you do not have to edit multiple copies of the `WPMessages.properties` file.
- Simplified version control. It is easier to track changes and back up revisions if the customized messages are located in one place.
- Upgrades to the product message catalog will not clash with any changes made to the customized entries.

How Identity Manager Retrieves Message Catalog Entries

Identity Manager retrieves message catalog entries in the following order:

- User-defined message catalog (Only one user-defined message catalog is permitted.)
- System-defined `defaultCustomCatalog` message catalog
- `config/WPMessages.properties` file
- `WPMessages.properties` file in the `idmcommon.jar` file

Message Catalog Format

In the `WPMessages.properties` file, entries are defined in the format `KeyName=MessageText`. In a customized message catalog, each entry is specified in a separate `Msg` element. The `KeyName` is specified in the `id` attribute, while the `MessageText` is text between the `<Msg>` and `</Msg>` tags. The following example illustrates a message catalog entry:

```
<Msg id='UI_REMEMBER_PASSWORD'>Remember to set your password.</Msg>
```

The message text can contain HTML tags to control how the text is rendered, although this is not recommended. If you need to use HTML tags, use codes such as `<` and `>`; instead symbols such as `<` and `>`.

Message text can also contain variables for data that Identity Manager will insert into the string when the string is displayed. The following example is the default message for the `AR_CORRELATED_USER` key:

```
Correlated account with user {0}.
```

The rendered version could appear as

```
Correlated account with user jdoe.
```

Creating a Customized Message Catalog

The following procedure describes how to create a user-defined message catalog.

▼ To Create a User-Defined Message Catalog

- 1 **If you are overriding default message catalog entries, locate the appropriate error message keys in the `WPMessages.properties` file. These keys must be specified in the customized message catalog.**

If you are creating new messages, confirm that the keys do not appear in the `WPMessages.properties` file

- 2 **Create an XML file or block with the following structure:**

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Configuration name='CatalogName'>
  <Extension>
    <CustomCatalog id='CatalogName' enabled='true'>
      <MessageSet language='en' country='US'>
        <Msg id='KeyName'>MessageText</Msg>
        <Msg id='KeyName'>MessageText</Msg>
```

```

    ...
    </MessageSet>
  </CustomCatalog>
</Extension>
</Configuration>

```

where:

CatalogName is the name of the message catalog. This value will also be used to define the catalog in the System Configuration object.

KeyName is the message key name.

MessageText is a string that will be displayed on the graphical user interface. This text can contain HTML tags and variables.

If you are supporting a locale other than en_US, change the language and country attributes. If you are supporting multiple locales, create a separate MessageSet element for each locale.

See the Example section for a working sample.

- 3 **Import the file or block into Identity Manager.**
- 4 **Load the System Configuration object and add the following line within the <Configuration><Extension><Object> element:**
 <Attribute name='customMessageCatalog' value='CatalogName' />
- 5 **Save the changes to the System Configuration object.**
- 6 **Restart the application server. The new message catalog entries are now available to the system.**

Example Message Catalog

The following example creates a customized message catalog named myCustomCatalog. It replaces the label and help text for the **Import Exchange File** subtab.

EXAMPLE 8-1 Creating Customized myCustomCatalog Message Catalog

```

<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?>
<!DOCTYPE Configuration PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Configuration name='myCustomCatalog'>
  <Extension>
    <CustomCatalog id='myCustomCatalog' enabled='true'>
      <MessageSet language='en' country='US'>
        <Msg id='UI_SUBNAV_CONFIGURE_IMPORT_EXCHANGE'>Import XML File</Msg>
        <Msg id='UI_SUBNAV_CONFIGURE_IMPORT_EXCHANGE_HELP'>Loads the specified XML file.</Msg>
      </MessageSet>
    </CustomCatalog>
  </Extension>
</Configuration>

```

EXAMPLE 8-1 Creating Customized myCustomCatalog Message Catalog (Continued)

```
</MessageSet>
</CustomCatalog>
</Extension>
</Configuration>
```

Developing Custom Adapters

Identity Manager’s open architecture enables you to create custom resource adapters to manage external resources that are not already supported by the resource adapters provided with Identity Manager. These custom adapters define essential characteristics and methods needed to transform requests from Identity Manager into actions performed on a resource.

This chapter describes how to create, test, and load a custom Identity Manager resource adapter. This information is organized as follows:

- “Before You Begin” on page 137
- “What is a Resource Adapter?” on page 139
- “Preparing for Adapter Development” on page 146
- “Writing Custom Adapters” on page 166
- “Installing Custom Adapters” on page 190
- “Testing Custom Adapters” on page 191
- “Troubleshooting Custom Adapters” on page 211
- “Maintaining Custom Adapters” on page 211

Note – Identity Manager contains sample adapters or *skeleton adapters* that are intended to be used as a basis for creating custom adapters. To enhance your understanding of these valuable starter files, this chapter uses them frequently to exemplify particular characteristics of resource adapter files.

Before You Begin

Review the information in these sections before you start developing custom adapters:

- “Intended Audience” on page 138
- “Important Notes” on page 138
- “Related Documentation” on page 138

Intended Audience

This chapter provides background information about resource adapter design and operation for:

- Developers who need to create custom resource adapters.
- Identity Manager administrators who are learning how the Identity Manager system works or who need to troubleshoot problems with resource adapters.

This chapter assumes that you are familiar with creating and using the built-in Identity Manager resources and that you have read the Resources chapter of Business Administrator's Guide.

Important Notes

Be sure to read the following information before trying to write custom resource adapters for Identity Manager:

- Do not create custom adapters in the `com.waveset.adapter` package. Instead, create custom adapters in a customer-specific package to be sure the adapter uses package-level classes and methods that are included in the supported public API. For example, use `com.customer_name.adapter`.

Also, all package names must be lowercase.

- Do not use `import *`. Although Java supports this mechanism, using `import *` is generally considered bad practice because this mechanism
 - Obscures the actual location of referenced classes to readers
 - Can result in incorrect or ambiguous references (such as compiler errors) in certain situations following internal refactoring

Instead, insert an explicit `import` statement for every referenced class or interface.

Related Documentation

In addition to the information provided in this chapter, see the following publications related to resource adapters.

TABLE 9-1 Related Documentation

Publication Title	Description
<i>Resource Reference</i>	Describes how to load and synchronize account information from a resource into Sun Identity Manager.

TABLE 9-1 Related Documentation (Continued)

Publication Title	Description
<i>Business Administrator's Guide</i>	Contains additional information about customizing and managing resources supplied by Identity Manager.

You can download these publications from <http://docs.sun.com>.

What is a Resource Adapter?

A resource adapter serves as a proxy between Identity Manager and an external resource, such as an application or database. The adapter defines the essential characteristics of the resource type, and this information is saved in the Identity Manager repository as a *resource object*. Identity Manager resource adapters are *standard* or *Active Sync-enabled* adapters.

This section contains the following topics:

- “What Are Standard Resource Adapters?” on page 139
- “What Are Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapters?” on page 140
- “What is a Resource Object?” on page 145
- “What is a Resource Adapter Class?” on page 145

What Are Standard Resource Adapters?

Standard resource adapters provide a generic interface to resource types that are supported by Identity Manager; such as Web servers, Web applications, databases, and even legacy applications and operating systems. In Java terms, standard resource adapters extend the `ResourceAdapterBase` class.

These adapters push account information changes from Identity Manager to their managed, external resources and typically perform the following administrative activities:

- Connect to and disconnect from a resource
- Create, delete, or modify users
- Enable, disable, or get users
- Authenticate users
- Manage objects such as group membership or directory organization structure

Standard resource adapters generally follow these steps when pushing information from Identity Manager to the resource managed by Identity Manager:

1. Identity Manager server initializes the resource manager.

All available resource types are registered through the Resource Adapter interface. As part of the registration process, the resource adapter provides a prototype XML definition.

2. User initiates process of creating a new resource.

When an Identity Manager administrator creates a new resource, the task that creates the form to display the resource type's prototype definition is queried for the resource attribute fields. Identity Manager uses these attributes to display a form in the browser. The user who is creating the new resource fills in the information and clicks Save.

3. Identity Manager saves the information provided, along with the other resource fields in the resource object repository under the name of the new resource object.

When the user clicks Save during resource creation, the creation task gathers the entered data, executes any necessary validation, then serializes the data using XML before writing the serialized object to the object repository.

4. Identity Manager displays the list of available resources in a multi-selection box when an Identity Manager user is created or modified.

Selecting a resource causes Identity Manager to query the resource object for the available account attribute fields. Identity Manager uses these field descriptions to display a form that contains the attribute fields, which the user can fill in with the appropriate data.

5. The resource object is queried for the connection information when this form is saved, and a connection is established with the resource.

6. The adapter sends the command to perform the intended action on the account on the resource over this connection.

7. If this request is a create request, the adapter updates the Identity Manager user object with the resource account information.

When user account information is displayed, Identity Manager requests the list of resources on which the user has accounts from the saved account object. For each resource, Identity Manager queries the resource object and uses the connection information to establish a connection to the resource.

The adapter sends a command over this connection to retrieve account information for the user, and it uses the retrieved information to fill in the attribute fields that are defined in the resource object. The system creates a form to display these values.

What Are Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapters?

Active Sync-enabled adapters are an extension of a standard resource adapter and they are used to implement the Active Sync interface for some common resources, such as Active Directory. These adapters pull data changes directly from the resource to initiate the following activities in Identity Manager:

- Polling or receiving change event notification
- Issuing actions to create, update, or delete resource accounts
- Editing or creating users with a custom form
- Saving the resource changes
- Logging progress information and errors

Active Sync-enabled adapters are particularly suitable for supporting the following resource types:

- Applications with audit or notification interfaces

Some applications, such as Microsoft Active Directory and PeopleSoft, have external interfaces. You can configure these application interfaces to add events to an audit log or to notify other applications when certain changes occur.

For example, you can configure the interface to record an transaction in the audit log whenever a user account is modified natively on the Active Directory server. You can configure the Identity Manager Active Directory resource to review this log every 30 minutes and trigger events in Identity Manager when any changes occur. You can register other Active Sync-enabled adapters with the resource through an API, and use event messages to notify the adapter when changes occur. These event messages can reference the item that changed, the information that was updated, and frequently the user who made the change.
- Databases populated with update information

You can manage database resources by generating a table of deltas and generate this table in several different ways. For example, you can compare a snapshot of the database to current values and create a new table with the differences. The adapter pulls rows from the table of deltas, processes them, and subsequently marks them when completed.
- Databases with modification timestamps

You can create Active Sync-enabled queries for database entries that have been modified after a particular time. The adapters run updates and then poll for new queries. By storing the last successfully processed row, Identity Manager can perform a “starts with” query to minimize the polling impact. Only those changes made to the resource since the previous set of modifications were made are returned for processing.
- Resources with change-log entries

Most LDAP servers provide a change-log mechanism that you can use to track changes, optionally constrained to sections of interest in the DIT. By periodically querying the change-log entries, the LDAP resource adapter can update Identity Manager with detected changes; including creates, deletes, and updates.

Active Sync-enabled adapters generally follow these steps when listening or polling for changes to the resource managed by Identity Manager. When the adapter detects that a resource has changed, the Active Sync-enabled adapter:

1. Extracts the changed information from the resource.
2. Determines which Identity Manager object is affected.
3. Builds a map of user attributes to pass to the `IAPIFactory.getIAPI` method, along with a reference to the adapter and a map of any additional options, which creates an Identity Application Programming Interface (IAPI) object.
4. Sets the logger on the IAPI event to the adapter’s Active Sync logger.

5. Submits the IAPI object to the Active Sync Manager.
6. Active Sync Manager processes the IAPI object and returns a `WavesetResult` object to the adapter. The `WavesetResult` object informs the Active Sync-enabled adapter if the operation succeeds.

The `WavesetResult` object might contain many results from the various steps the Identity Manager system used to update the identity. Typically, a workflow also handles errors within Identity Manager, often ending up as an Approval for a managing administrator.

7. Exceptions are logged in the Active Sync and Identity Manager tracing logs with the `ActiveSyncUtil.logResourceException` method.

When Active Sync-enabled adapters detect a change to an account on a resource, the adapter maps the incoming attributes to an Identity Manager user or, if the adapter cannot match the user account, creates an Identity Manager user account.

The following rules and parameters determine what happens when a change is detected.

Parameter	Description
Confirmation Rule	<p>Rule that is evaluated for all users returned by a correlation rule. For each user, the full User view of the correlation Identity Manager identity and the resource account information (placed under the “account” namespace) are passed to the confirmation rule. The confirmation rule is then expected to return a value which may be expressed like a Boolean value. For example, “true” or “1” or “yes” and “false” or “0” or null.</p> <p>For the Database Table, Flat File, and PeopleSoft Component Active Sync adapters, the default confirmation rule is inherited from the reconciliation policy on the resource.</p> <p>The same confirmation rule can be used for reconciliation and Active Sync.</p>

Parameter	Description
Correlation Rule	<p>If no Identity Manager user's resource information is determined to own the resource account, the Correlation Rule is invoked to determine a list of potentially matching users/accountIDs or attribute conditions, used to match the user, based on the resource account attributes (in the account namespace).</p> <p>Returns one of the following types of information that can be used to correlate the entry with an existing Identity Manager account:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Identity Manager user name ■ <code>WSAttributes</code> object (used for attribute-based search) ■ List of <code>AttributeCondition</code> or <code>WSAttribute</code>-type items (AND-ed attribute-based search) ■ List of <code>String</code>-type items (each item is the Identity Manager ID or the user name of an Identity Manager account) <p>If more than one Identity Manager account can be identified by the correlation rule, a confirmation rule or resolve process rule is required to handle the matches.</p> <p>For the Database Table, Flat File, and PeopleSoft Component Active Sync adapters, the default correlation rule is inherited from the reconciliation policy on the resource.</p> <p>The same correlation rule can be used for reconciliation and Active Sync.</p>
Create Unmatched Accounts	<p>If set to <code>true</code>, creates an account on the resource when no matching Identity Manager user is found. If <code>false</code>, the account is not created unless the process rule is set and the workflow it identifies determines that a new account is warranted. The default is <code>true</code>.</p>
Delete Rule	<p>A rule that can expect a map of all values with keys of the form <code>activeSync.</code> or <code>account.</code> pulled from an entry or line in the flat file. A <code>LighthouseContext</code> object (<code>display.session</code>) based on the proxy administrator's session is made available to the context of the rule. The rule is then expected to return a value which may be expressed like a Boolean value. For example, "true" or "1" or "yes" and "false" or "0" or null.</p> <p>If the rule returns true for an entry, the account deletion request will be processed through forms and workflow, depending on how the adapter is configured.</p>
Populate Global	<p>If set to <code>true</code>, populates the global namespace in addition to the ActiveSync namespace. The default value is <code>false</code>.</p>

Parameter	Description
Process Rule	<p>Either the name of a TaskDefinition or a rule that returns the name of a TaskDefinition, to run for every record in the feed. The Process rule gets the resource account attributes in the Active Sync namespace, as well as the resource ID and name.</p> <p>A Process rule controls all functionality that occurs when the system detects any change on the resource. It is used when full control of the account processing is required. As a result, a process rule overrides all other rules.</p> <p>If a Process rule is specified, the process will be run for every row regardless of any other settings on this adapter.</p> <p>At minimum, a process rule must perform the following functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Query for a matching User view. ■ If the User exists, checkout the view. If not, create the User. ■ Update or populate the view. ■ Checkin the User view. <p>It is possible to synchronize objects other than User, such as LDAP Roles.</p>
Resolve Process Rule	<p>Name of the TaskDefinition or a rule that returns the name of a TaskDefinition to run in case of multiple matches to a record in the feed. The Resolve Process rule gets the resource account attributes as well as the resource ID and name.</p> <p>This rule is also needed if there were no matches and Create Unmatched Accounts was not selected.</p> <p>This workflow can be a process that prompts an administrator for manual action.</p>

Note – If present, a Process rule determines whether the adapter uses IAPIProcess or attempts to use IAPIUser. If the adapter cannot use IAPIUser because a Correlation or Confirmation rule does not uniquely identify an Identity Manager user for the event (given the other parameter settings), and a Resolve Process rule is configured, the adapter uses the Resolve Process rule to create an IAPIProcess event. Otherwise, the adapter reports an error condition.

IAPIUser checks out a view and makes this view available to the User form.

- For creates and updates, IAPIUser checks out the User view.
- For deletes, IAPIUser checks out the Deprovision view.

However, a User view is not checked out or available with IAPIProcess. Either a Process rule has been set or a Resolve Process rule is invoked.

What is a Resource Object?

Resource objects define the capabilities and configuration of the resource you are managing in Identity Manager, including the information described in the following table.

TABLE 9-2 Information Defined by Resource Objects

Type of Information	Sample Attributes
Connection information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Host name ■ Administrative account name ■ Administrative account Password
User attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ First name ■ Last name ■ Phone numbers
Identity Manager attributes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ List of approvers ■ Password policy for the resource ■ How many times to repeat attempts when contacting the resource

You must define a resource object in Identity Manager for every resource that Identity Manager communicates with or manages.

Note – You can view resource objects from Identity Manager’s Debug pages:

`http://host:port/idm/debug/`

Where:

- *host* is the local server on which Identity Manager is running.
- *port* is the TCP port number on which the server is listening.

The `session.jsp` page gives you the option of listing objects of type Resource. See [“Viewing and Editing a Resource Object” on page 209](#) for more information.

What is a Resource Adapter Class?

A resource adapter class implements methods that

- Register the resource object in the Identity Manager repository
- Enable you to manage the external resource
- Push information from Identity Manager to the resource
- (Optional) Pull information from the resource into Identity Manager

This optional pull capability is known as Active Sync, and a resource adapter with Active Sync capability is referred to as *Active Sync-enabled*. See [“What Are Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapters?”](#) on page 140 for more information.

Preparing for Adapter Development

Some preparation is necessary before you actually start writing a custom adapter. This section describes how to prepare for adapter development, and the tasks include:

- [“Become Familiar with Adapter Source Code”](#) on page 146
- [“Profile the Resource”](#) on page 161
- [“Decide Which Classes and Methods to Include”](#) on page 163
- [“Review the REF Kit”](#) on page 164
- [“Set Up the Build Environment”](#) on page 165

Become Familiar with Adapter Source Code

Before you can create a custom adapter, you must become familiar with the components in a resource adapter’s source code. This section describes the following components, which are common to most adapters:

- [“Standard Java Header Information”](#) on page 146
- [“PrototypeXML String”](#) on page 146
- [“Resource Methods”](#) on page 156
- [“Considerations for Standard Resource Adapters”](#) on page 157
- [“Example Object Resource Attribute Declaration”](#) on page 160

Standard Java Header Information

Standard Java header information identifies the parent class of the new adapter class file you are creating, constructors, and imported files.

This header information is representative of the standard Java files (including public class declaration and class constructors). You must edit the sections of the file that list the constructors and public classes, and, if necessary, the imported files.

PrototypeXML String

The prototypeXML string in the adapter Java file is the XML definition of a resource. This string must contain the resource name and all of the resource attributes that you want to display in the Identity Manager user interface. The prototypeXML string also defines resource objects stored in the Identity Manager repository.

The following table describes the different prototypeXML information types that you use to define a resource in Identity Manager.

Note – Some of these information types are specific to Active Sync-enabled adapters.

TABLE 9-3 prototypeXML Information Types

Type	Description
Resource	<p>Defines top-level characteristics of the resource. Keywords include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ syncSource: If true, then adapter must be Active Sync-enabled. ■ facets: Specifies the modes enabled for this resource.
Resource attributes	<p>XML elements that are defined with the <ResourceAttribute> element and used by Identity Manager to configure the resource.</p> <p>For more information, see “Resource Attributes” on page 147.</p>
Account attributes	<p>Defines the default schema map for basic user attributes.</p> <p>You use the <AccountAttribute> element to define account attributes. You map standard Identity Manager account attribute types differently than you map custom attributes.</p> <p>For more information about mapping account attributes to resource attributes, see “Map the Attributes” on page 169.</p>
Identity template	<p>Defines how the account name for the user is built. Use the <Template> tag to define this template. Account names are typically in one of the following forms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ An accountId is typically used for resources with a flat namespace such as Oracle. ■ A complete distinguished name (DN) of the user in the form: <code>cn=accountId,ou=sub-org,ou=org,o=company</code>. Use this form for hierarchical namespaces such as directories. <p>For more information, see “Identity Template” on page 154.</p>
Login configuration	<p><i>(Standard resource adapter only)</i> Defines values to support pass-through authentication for the resource. Use the <LoginConfigEntry> element to define this value.</p> <p>For more information about pass-through authentication, see the Resource Reference.</p>
Form	<p><i>(Active Sync-enabled adapters only)</i> Designates a form object that processes data from the Active Sync-enabled adapter before the data is integrated into Identity Manager. A form is optional, but in most cases a form provides flexible changes in the future and can be used to transform incoming data, map data to other user attributes on other resource accounts, and cause other actions in Identity Manager to occur.</p>

Resource Attributes

Only available to Administrators defining the resource.

Resource attributes define the connection information on the resource being managed. Resource attributes typically include the resource host name, resource administrator name and password, and the container information for directory-based resources. Identity Manager

attributes such as the list of resource approvers and the number of times to retry operations on the resource are also considered resource attributes.

When writing custom adapters, you use resource attributes to define:

- Resources you want to manage, along with other connection and resource characteristics.

From the perspective of an administrator using the Identity Manager Administrator interface, these attributes define the field names that are visible in the Identity Manager interface and prompt the user for values.

For Active Directory resources, attributes can include source name, host name, port number, user, password, and domain. For example, the Create/Edit Resource page for a resource type requires a host field in which administrators creating a resource identify the host on which the resource resides. This field (not the contents of the field) is defined in this adapter file.

- Authorized account that has rights to create users on the resource. For an Active Directory resource, this includes the user and password fields.
- Source attributes including the form, the Identity Manager administrator that the adapter will run as, scheduling and logging information, and additional attributes used only in Active Sync methods.

You can modify these values from the Identity Manager interface when creating a specific instance of this resource type.

Defining Resource Attributes

You use the `<ResourceAttribute>` element, as shown in the following example, to define resource attributes in the `prototypeXML` string of the adapter Java file:

```
<ResourceAttribute name="+RA_HOST+" type='string' multi='false'\n"+
description='&lt;b&gt;host&lt;/b&gt;&lt;br&gt;Enter the resource host name.'>\n"+
```

Where the `description` field identifies the item-level help for the `RA_HOST` field and must not contain the `<` character. In the preceding example, the `<` characters are replaced by `<` and `'`.

The following table describes the keywords you can use in `<ResourceAttribute>` element.

TABLE 9-4 `<ResourceAttribute>` Element Keywords

Keyword	Description
name	Identifies the name of the attribute.
	NOTE: The name keyword is a reserved word in views and should not be used as a Identity System User Attribute on resource schema maps.

TABLE 9-4 <ResourceAttribute> Element Keywords (Continued)

Keyword	Description
type	Identifies the data type used.
multi	Specifies whether multiple values can be accepted for the attribute. If true, a multi-line box displays.
description	Identifies the item-level help for the RA_HOST field. Identity Manager displays help with the item being described (host in this case) in bold text. Because the HTML brackets necessary to do this (< and >) interfere with XML parsing, they are replaced by < and >. After the binary is translated, the description value looks like: Description='host Enter the resource host name.'
facets	Specifies the usage of this resource attribute. Valid values are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ provision: Used in standard processing (default value). ▪ activesync: Used in Active Sync processing for an Active Sync-enabled adapter.

The <ResourceAttribute> element may also contain a <ValidationPolicy> element. A validation policy ensures the value a user specifies on the Resource Parameters page meets the requirements defined in a separate policy object.

The following sample causes the adapter to use the Port Policy to ensure the specified value is valid. The default Port Policy checks the value is an integer between 1 and 65536.

```
<ResourceAttribute name='Port' value='123'>
  <ValidationPolicy>
    <ObjectRef type='Policy' id='#ID#PortPolicy' name='Port Policy' />
  </ValidationPolicy>
</ResourceAttribute>
```

Overwriting Resource Attributes

When you are working with resource adapters and adapter parameters, you can use one of the following strategies to overwrite resource attributes:

- Use the adapter's Attribute page to set a resource attribute value once for all users
- Set a default attribute value on the adapter, then subsequently override its value, as needed, within your user form

In the following example, the user form must override the resource attribute value for template during the creation of each user. When implementing similar code in a production environment, you would probably include more detailed logic to calculate this template value within your user form.

EXAMPLE 9-1 Overwriting the Resource Attribute Value for template

```
<Field name='template'>
  <Display class='Text'>
    <Property name='title' value='NDS User Template'/>
  </Display>
</Field>
<!-- Change NDS for the name of your NDS resource -->
<!-- Template is the name of the attribute field, as viewed in the resource xml -->
<Field name='accounts[NDS].resourceAttributes.Template'>
  <Expansion>
    <ref>template</ref>
  </Expansion>
</Field>
```

Required Resource Attributes

The following table describes required resource attributes that are supplied in the skeleton adapter files.

TABLE 9-5 Resource Attributes in Skeleton Adapter Files

Required Resource Attribute	Description
RA_HOST	Resource host name. This attribute corresponds to the Host field on the Resource Parameters page.
RA_PORT	Port number used to communicate with the resource. This attribute corresponds to the Port field on the Resource Parameters page.
RA_USER	Name of a user account that has permission to connect to the resource. The field name varies on the Resource Parameters page.
RA_PASSWORD	Password for the account specified by RA_USER. This attribute corresponds to the Host field on the Resource Parameters page.

The next table describes required Active Sync-specific attributes that are defined in the ACTIVE_SYNC_STD_RES_ATTRS_XML string of the Active Sync class.

TABLE 9-6 Active Sync-Specific Attributes Defined in ACTIVE_SYNC_STD_RES_ATTRS_XML

Required Resource Attribute	Description
RA_PROXY_ADMINISTRATOR	Identity Manager administrator for authorization and logging. This attribute corresponds to the Proxy Administrator field in the Identity Manager display. You do not define this value in the adapter Java file. Instead, an administrator enters this information when defining a specific instance of this resource type.

TABLE 9-6 Active Sync-Specific Attributes Defined in ACTIVE_SYNC_STD_RES_ATTRS_XML (Continued)

Required Resource Attribute	Description
RA_FORM	Form that processes incoming attributes and maps them to view attributes. This attribute corresponds to the Input Form field.
RA_MAX_ARCHIVES	Specifies the number of log files to retain. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If you specify 0, then a single log file is re-used. ▪ If you specify -1, then log files are never discarded.
RA_MAX_AGE_LENGTH	Specifies the maximum time before a log file is archived. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If you specify zero, then no time-based archival occurs. ▪ If the RA_MAX_ARCHIVES value is zero, then the active log is truncated and reused after this time period.
RA_MAX_AGE_UNIT	Specify seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, or months. Use this value with RA_MAX_AGE_LENGTH.
RA_LOG_LEVEL	Logging level (0 disabled; 4 very verbose). This attribute corresponds to the Log Level field in the Identity Manager display.
RA_LOG_PATH	Absolute or relative path for the log file. This attribute corresponds to the Log File Path field in the Identity Manager display.
RA_LOG_SIZE	Maximum log file size. This attribute corresponds to the Maximum Log File Size field in the Identity Manager display.
RA_SCHEDULE_INTERVAL	Pop-up menu of the supported scheduling intervals (second, minute, hour, day, week, month).
RA_SCHEDULE_INTERVAL_COUNT	Number of intervals between scheduled periods (for example, 10 minutes has an interval count of 10 and an interval of minute). Not necessary for Active Sync-enabled adapters.
RA_SCHEDULE_START_TIME	Time of the day to run. For example, if you specify 13:00 and set the interval to week, the adapter runs at 1 P.M. once a week. Not necessary for Active Sync-enabled adapters.
RA_SCHEDULE_START_DATE	Date to start scheduling. Setting date to 20020601, the interval to month, and the time to 13:00 starts the adapter on June 1st and runs once a month at 1 P.M. Not necessary for Active Sync-enabled adapters.

This table describes required Active Sync-specific attributes that are defined in the ACTIVE_SYNC_EVENT_RES_ATTRS_XML string of the Active Sync class.

TABLE 9-7 Active Sync-Specific Attributes Defined in ACTIVE_SYNC_EVENT_RES_ATTRS_XML

Required Resource Attribute	Description
RA_PROCESS_RULE	Name of a TaskDefinition or a rule that returns the name of a TaskDefinition to run for every record in the feed. This attribute overrides all others.

TABLE 9-7 Active Sync-Specific Attributes Defined in ACTIVE_SYNC_EVENT_RES_ATTRS_XML (Continued)

Required Resource Attribute	Description
RA_CORRELATION_RULE	Rule that returns a list of strings of potentially matching users/accountIDs, based on the resource account attributes in the account namespace.
RA_CONFIRMATION_RULE	Rule that confirms whether a user is a match.
RA_DELETE_RULE	Rule that determines whether a delete detected on the resource is processed as an IAPI delete event, or as an IAPI update event.
RA_CREATE_UNMATCHED	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ If set to <code>true</code>, creates unmatched accounts. ▪ If false, do not create the account unless the process rule is set and the workflow it identifies determines that a create is warranted. Default is <code>true</code>.
RA_RESOLVE_PROCESS_RULE	Rule that determines the workflow to run when there are multiple matches using the confirmation rule on the results of the correlation rule.
RA_POPULATE_GLOBAL	Indicates whether to populate the global namespace in addition to the <code>activeSync</code> namespace. Default is <code>false</code> .

Identity Manager Account Attributes

Only available to Administrators defining the resource.

Identity Manager account attributes describe the default user attributes supported for the resource.

With an Active Sync-enabled adapter, account attributes are the attributes that are available to update the Identity Manager user account. The Active Sync-enabled adapter collects these attributes and stores them in the global area for the input form.

Identity Manager supports the following types of account attributes:

- `string`
- `integer`
- `boolean`
- `encrypted`
- `binary`

Binary attributes include graphic files, audio files, or certificates. Not all adapters support binary account attributes. Generally, only certain directory, flat file, and database adapters can process binary attributes.

Note –

- Consult the “Account Attributes” section of the adapter documentation to determine if your adapter supports binary attributes.
 - Keep the size of any file referenced in a binary attribute as small as possible. For example, loading extremely large graphics files can affect Identity Manager’s performance.
-

You define Identity Manager account attributes in the `AttributeDefinition` object of the resource’s schema map, and use the `prototypeXML` string in the adapter file to map incoming resource attributes to account attributes in Identity Manager. For example, you would map the LDAP `sn` resource attribute to the `lastname` attribute in Identity Manager. Identity Manager account attributes include

- `accountId`
- `email`
- `firstname`
- `fullname`
- `lastname`
- `password`

Standard Adapter Schema Maps

You use the Account Attributes page, or schema map, to map Identity Manager account attributes to resource account attributes. The list of attributes varies for each resource. You generally remove all unused attributes from the schema map page. If you add attributes, you will probably need to edit user forms or other code.

The attribute mappings specified in the resource schema map determine which account attributes can be requested when you are creating a user. Based on the role selected for a user, you will be prompted for a set of account attributes that are the union of attributes of all resources in the selected role.

Note – To view or edit the Identity Manager schema for users or roles, you must be a member of the IDM Schema Configuration AdminGroup and you must have the IDM Schema Configuration capability.

Active Sync-Enabled Adapter Schema Maps

The Active Sync resource schema map is an optional utility that enables you to edit inputs to an Active Sync-enabled adapter, which are often database column names or directory attribute names. Using the schema map and an Active Sync form, you can implement Java code to handle a resource type, defining details of the resource configuration in the map and form.

Identity Manager uses an Active Sync resource's schema map in the same way that it uses a typical schema map. The schema map specifies which attributes to fetch from the resource and their local names. All attribute names that are listed in the schema map (that is, all attributes that exist on the resource) are made available to the Active Sync form and the user form with the `activeSync.name` attribute. If the Active Sync resource does not use a form, all attributes are named `global` to ensure that all attributes automatically propagate to attributes with the same name on all resources. Use a form rather than the global namespace.

Tip – Do not put the `accountId` attribute in the global namespace because this special attribute is used to identify `waveset.account.global`.

If you are creating the resource account for the first time, the `accountId` attribute also becomes a resource's `accountId` directly and it bypasses the identity template.

For example, if a new Identity Manager user is created through the Active Sync-enabled adapter and that user has an LDAP account assigned to it, the LDAP `accountID` will match the `global.accountId` instead of the correct DN from the DN template.

Using the Schema Map

After creating a resource instance, administrators can subsequently use a schema map to:

- Limit resource attributes to only those that are essential for your company.
- Map Identity Manager attributes to resource attributes.
- Create common Identity Manager attribute names to use with multiple resources.
- Identify required user attributes and attribute types.

You can view Identity Manager account attributes from the Edit Schema page in the Identity Manager user interface by clicking the Edit Schema button located at the bottom of the Edit/Create Resourcenource page.

For more information about creating a resource or editing a resource schema map, see the *Business Administrator's Guide*.

Identity Template

Note – An identity template is only available to Administrators who are defining the resource.

To view or edit the Identity Manager schema for Users or Roles, you must be a member of the `IDM Schema Configuration AdminGroup` and you must have the `IDM Schema Configuration` capability.

You use the identity template (or account DN) to define a user's default account name syntax when creating the account on the resource. The identity template translates the Identity Manager user account information to account information on the external resource.

You can use any schema map attribute (an attribute listed on the left side of the schema map) in the identity template, and you can overwrite the user identity template from the User form, which is commonly done to substitute organization names.

Identity Manager users have an identity for each of their accounts, and this identity can be the same for some or for all of these accounts. The system sets the identity for an account when the account is provisioned. The Identity Manager user object maintains a mapping between a user's identities and the resources to which they correspond.

The user has a primary `accountId` in Identity Manager that is used as a key and as a separate `accountId` for each of the resources on which that user has an account. The `accountId` is denoted in the form of `accountId:<resource name>`, as shown in the following table.

TABLE 9-8 `accountId` Examples

Attribute	Example
<code>accountId</code>	<code>maurelius</code>
<code>accountId:NT_Res1</code>	<code>marcus_aurelius</code>
<code>accountId:LDAP_Res1</code>	<code>uid=maurelius,ou=marketing,ou=employees,o=abc_company</code>
<code>accountId:AIX_Res1</code>	<code>maurelius</code>

Account user names are in one of two forms:

- Flat namespaces
- Hierarchical namespaces

Flat Namespaces

You typically use the `accountId` attribute for systems with a flat namespace, which include:

- UNIX systems
- Oracle and Sybase relational databases

For resources with flat namespaces, the identity template can simply specify that the Identity Manager account name be used.

Hierarchical Namespaces

You use distinguished names (DNs) for systems with a hierarchical namespace. DN's can include the account name, organizational units, and organizations.

Account name syntax is especially important for hierarchical namespaces. For resources with hierarchical namespaces, the identity template can be more complicated than that of a flat namespace, which allows you to build the full, hierarchical name. The following table shows examples of hierarchical namespaces and how they represent DNs.

TABLE 9-9 Hierarchical Namespace Examples

System	Distinguished Name String
LDAP	<code>cn=\$accountId,ou=austin,ou=central,ou=sales,o=comp</code>
Novell NDS	<code>cn=\$accountId.ou=accounting.o=comp</code>
Microsoft Windows 2000	<code>CN=\$fullname,CN=Users,DC=mydomain,DC=com</code>

For example, you can specify the following for a resource identity template with a hierarchical namespace such as LDAP:

```
uid=$accountID,ou=$department,ou=People,cn=waveset,cn=com
```

Where:

- `accountID` is the Identity Manager account name
- `department` is the user's department name

Login Configuration

Login Configuration defines parameters that are used if you are going to use the resource for pass-through authentication. Typically, these parameters are `username` and `password`, but some resources use different parameters. For example, SecurId uses `user name` and `pass code`.

The Login Configuration information type helps define the resource, but it is not easily modified by administrators.

For more information about pass-through authentication, see [“Enabling Pass-Through Authentication for Resource Types” on page 179](#) and the Resource Reference.

Resource Methods

Resource methods write information from Identity Manager into the external resource.

Note – You must be familiar with the resource to write customized methods.

You categorize resource methods by task. When developing your own custom adapters, you must determine which categories your adapter needs to meet the goals of your development. For example,

- Is your adapter going to be a standard or an Active Sync-enabled adapter?
- Will the first phase of your deployment support password reset only?

How you answer these questions determines which resource methods must be completed.

The following table describes resource methods categories. (Additional information about each functional category is discussed later in this chapter.)

TABLE 9-10 Resource Methods Categories

Category	Description
Basic	Provide the basic methods for connecting to the resource and performing simple actions
Bulk operations	Provide bulk operations to get all the users from the resource
Active Sync	Provides the methods to schedule the adapter.
Object management	Provides the methods to manage groups and organizations on your resources. Helps define the resource, but is not easily modified by administrators.

In Active Sync-enabled adapters, resource methods

- Create a feed from the resource into Identity Manager. Presents methods that search the resource for changes or receive updates. To write these methods, you must understand how to register or search for changes on the resource, and communicate with the resource.
- Run update operations in the Identity Manager repository by performing the feed from the resource into Identity Manager.

Considerations for Standard Resource Adapters

The following considerations are specific to account attributes in standard resource adapters:

- User identity template
- Creating an identity template out of multiple user attributes
- Login configuration and pass-through authentication

User Identity Template

Note – To view or edit the Identity Manager schema for Users or Roles you must be a member of the IDM Schema Configuration AdminGroup and you must have the IDM Schema Configuration capability.

The user identity template establishes the account name to use when creating the account on the resource. This template translates Identity Manager user account information to account information on the external resource.

You can use any schema map attribute (an attribute listed on the left side of the schema map) in the identity template.

You can overwrite the user identity template from the User form, which is commonly done to substitute organization names.

Creating an Identity Template Out of Multiple User Attributes

You can create an identity template out of a portion of multiple user attributes. For example, a template might consist of the first letter of the first name plus seven characters of the last name. In this case, you can customize the user form to perform the desired logic and then override the identity template that is defined on the resource.

Login Configuration and Pass-Through Authentication

The `<LoginConfigEntry>` element specifies the name and type of login module as well as the set of authentication properties required by this resource type to complete successful user authentication.

The `<LoginConfig>` and `<SupportedApplications>` sections of the adapter file specify whether the resource will be included in the options list on the Login Module configuration pages. Do not change this section of the file if you want the resource to appear in the options list.

Each `<AuthnProperty>` element contains the following attributes.

TABLE 9-11 `<AuthnProperty>` Element Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code>dataSource</code>	Specifies the source for the value of this property. Data sources for this property value include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ user (<i>Default</i>): Value provided by the user at login time. ▪ http attribute: Value provided by the specified http session attribute. ▪ http header: Value provided by the specified http header. ▪ http remote user: Value provided by the http request's remote user property. ▪ http request: Value provided by the specified http request parameter. ▪ resource attribute (Active Directory only): Value allows you to specify an extra authentication attribute for the specific adapter. This attribute is only valid for the resource on which it is defined, and it cannot be manipulated by the user. ▪ x509 certificate: Value is the X509 client certificate (only valid for requests made using https).
<code>displayName</code>	Specifies the value to use when this property is added as an HTML item to the Login form.
<code>doNotMap</code>	Specifies whether to map to a <code>LoginConfigEntry</code> .

TABLE 9-11 <AuthnProperty> Element Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Description
formFieldType	Specifies the data type that can be either text or password. This type is used to control whether data input in the HTML field associated with this property is visible (text) or not (password)
isId	Specifies whether this property value should be mapped to the Identity Manager account ID. For example, a property should not be mapped if the property value is an X509 certificate.
name	Identifies the internal authentication property name.

User management across forests is only possible when multiple gateways, one for each forest, are deployed. In this case, you can configure the adapters to use a predefined domain for authentication per adapter without requiring the user to specify a domain as follows:

▼ To Manage Users Across Forests

- 1 Add the following authentication property to the <AuthnProperties> element in the resource object's XML:

```
<AuthnProperty name='w2k_domain' dataSource='resource attribute'
value='MyDomainName'/>
```

- 2 Replace *MyDomainName* with the domain that authenticates users.

Note – For more information about this property, see the Active Directory resource adapter documentation in Resource Reference.

Most resource login modules support both the Identity Manager Administrative interface and User interface. The following example shows how `SkeletonResourceAdapter.java` implements the <LoginConfigEntry> element:

```
<LoginConfigEntry name="+Constants.WS_RESOURCE_LOGIN_MODULE+" type="+RESOURCE_NAME+"
displayName="+RESOURCE_LOGIN_MODULE+">\n"+
  "  <AuthnProperties>\n"+
  "    <AuthnProperty name="+LOGIN_USER+" displayName="+DISPLAY_USER+" formFieldType='text' isId='true'/>\n"+
  "    <AuthnProperty name="+LOGIN_PASSWORD+" displayName="+DISPLAY_PASSWORD+" formFieldType='password'/>\n"+
  "  </AuthnProperties>\n"+
  "  <SupportedApplications>\n"+
  "    <SupportedApplication name="+Constants.ADMINCONSOLE+"/>\n"+
  "    <SupportedApplication name="+Constants.SELFPROVISION+"/>\n"+
  "  </SupportedApplications>\n"+
```

</LoginConfigEntry>\n"+The following example defines the supported LoginModule DATA_SOURCE options. In this example, a LoginConfig entry is taken from the LDAP resource adapter supplied by

Identity Manager. The entry defines two authentication properties whose `dataSource` value, if not specified, is supplied by the user.

```
public static final String USER_DATA_SOURCE = "user";
public static final String HTTP_REMOTE_USER_DATA_SOURCE = "http remote user";
public static final String HTTP_ATTRIBUTE_DATA_SOURCE = "http attribute";
public static final String HTTP_REQUEST_DATA_SOURCE = "http request";
public static final String HTTP_HEADER_DATA_SOURCE = "http header";
public static final String HTTPS_X509_CERTIFICATE_DATA_SOURCE = "x509 certificate";
" <LoginConfigEntry name="+WS_RESOURCE_LOGIN_MODULE+"
type="+LDAP_RESOURCE_TYPE+"
displayName="+Messages.RES_LOGIN_MOD_LDAP+">\n"+
" <AuthnProperties>\n"+
" <AuthnProperty name="+LDAP_UID+" displayName="+Messages.UI_USERID_LABEL+"
formFieldType='text' isId='true'/>\n"+
" <AuthnProperty name="+LDAP_PASSWORD+"
displayName="+Messages.UI_PWD_LABEL+"
formFieldType='password'/>\n"+
" </AuthnProperties>\n"+
" </LoginConfigEntry>\n"+
```

The next example shows a Login Config entry where the authentication property's `dataSource` value is not supplied by the user. In this case, the value is derived from the HTTP request header.

```
" <LoginConfigEntry name="+Constants.WS_RESOURCE_LOGIN_MODULE+"
|type="+RESOURCE_NAME+" displayName="+RESOURCE_LOGIN_MODULE+">\n"+
" <AuthnProperties>\n"+
" <AuthnProperty name="+LOGIN_USER+" displayName="+DISPLAY_USER+"
formFieldType='text' isId='true' dataSource='http header'/>\n"+
" </AuthnProperties>\n"+|
" </LoginConfigEntry>\n"+
```

Example Object Resource Attribute Declaration

The following example shows how `prototypeXML` defines fields displayed on the Create/Edit Resource page.

EXAMPLE 9-2 `prototypeXML` Defining Fields Displayed on Create/Edit Resource Page

```
<ResourceAttributes>
  <ResourceAttribute name='Host' description='The host name running the resource
    agent.' multi='false' value='n'>
  </ResourceAttribute>
  <ResourceAttribute name='TCP Port' description='The TCP/IP port used to communicate
    with the LDAP server.' multi='false' value='9278'>
  </ResourceAttribute>
  <ResourceAttribute name='user' description='The administrator user name with which
```

EXAMPLE 9-2 prototypeXML Defining Fields Displayed on Create/Edit Resource Page (Continued)

```

    the system should authenticate.' multi='false' value='Administrator'>
  </ResourceAttribute>
  <ResourceAttribute name='password' type='encrypted' description='The password that
    should be used when authenticating.' multi='false' value='VhXrkGkfDKw='>
  </ResourceAttribute>
  <ResourceAttribute name='domain' description='The name of the domain in which
    accounts will be created.' multi='false' value='AD'>
  </ResourceAttribute>
</ResourceAttributes>

```

The Identity Manager Administrative interface displays the resource attributes for the default resource as specified.

Profile the Resource

The following sections describe how to profile and define prerequisites for standard resource adapters and Active Sync-enabled adapters.

- [“Profiling a Standard Resource Adapter” on page 161](#)
- [“Profiling an Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapter” on page 162](#)

Profiling a Standard Resource Adapter

Use the following information to create a profile and define prerequisites for a standard resource adapter:

- Select an Identity Manager adapter file that most closely resembles the resource type to which you are connecting.
 - See [Table 9-12](#) for a brief description of the default Identity Manager resource adapter files supplied with a standard Identity Manager configuration.
- Research user account characteristics and how these tasks are performed on the remote resource:
 - Authenticate access to the remote resource
 - Update users
 - Get details about the changed users
 - List all users on the system
 - List other system objects, such as groups, that are used in the `ListAllObjects` method
- Identify the minimum attributes needed to perform an action and all supported attributes.
- Verify that you have the appropriate tools to support connection to the resource.

Many resources ship with a published set of APIs or a complete toolkit that can be used to integrate outside applications to the resource. Determine whether your resource has a set of APIs or whether the toolkit provides documentation and tools to speed up integration with Identity Manager. For example, you must connect to a database through JDBC.

- Determine who can log in and search for users on the resource

Most resource adapters require and run an administrative account to perform tasks such as searching for users and retrieving attributes. This account is typically a highly privileged or super user account, but can be a delegated administration account with read-only access.

- Determine whether you can extend the resource's built-in attributes.

For example, Active Directory and LDAP both allow you to create *extended schema* attributes, which are attributes other than the standard Identity Manager attributes.

Decide which attributes you want to maintain in Identity Manager, determine what the attribute names are on the resource, and decide what to name the attributes in Identity Manager. These attribute names go in the schema map and are used as inputs to forms that are used to create a resource of that type.

Profiling an Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapter

When profiling an Active Sync-Enabled resource adapter, use the following information *in addition to* the considerations described in [“Profiling a Standard Resource Adapter” on page 161](#):

- When researching user account characteristics and how these tasks are performed on the remote resource, you must also:
 - Search for changes to users
 - Identify ways to search for changed users only
- Determine which resource attributes or actions create events.

If the resource supports subscribing to notification messages when changes are made, identify which attribute changes you want to trigger the notification and which attributes you want in the message.
- Decide which of the following actions Identity Manager should perform when the adapter detects an event on the source.
 - Create, update, or delete a user
 - Disable or enable an account
 - Update the answers used to authenticate a user
 - Update a phone number
- Decide whether you want the adapter to be driven by events in the external resource or driven by specified polling intervals.

Note – Before making your decision, you must understand how polling works in typical Identity Manager installations. Although some installations implement or are driven by external events, most Identity Manager deployment environments use a hybrid method.

Choose one of the following approaches:

- Set up polling intervals where an Active Sync Manager thread calls the poll interface at a configurable interval or on a specified schedule. You can set polling parameters, including settings such as faster polling if work was received, thread-per-adapter or common thread, and limits on the amount of concurrent operations.
- Set up an event-driven environment where the adapter sets up a listening connection, such as an LDAP listener, and waits for messages from the remote system. You can implement the poll method to do nothing, and set the polling interval to an arbitrary value, such as once a week. If updates are event-driven, the updates must have a guaranteed delivery mechanism, such as MQ Series, or synchronization is lost.
- Implement a hybrid solution where external events trigger *smart polling* and the regular poll routine can recover from missed messages.

Smart polling adapts the poll rate to the change rate and polls infrequently unless changes are being made often. Smart polling balances the performance impact of frequent polling with the update delays of infrequent polling.

In this model, incoming messages are queued and multiple updates for a single object are collapsed into a single update, which increases efficiency. For example, multiple attributes can be updated on a directory, and each attribute triggers a message. The poll routine examines the message queue and removes all duplicates. The routine then fetches the complete object to ensure that the latest data is synchronized and that updates are handled efficiently.

Decide Which Classes and Methods to Include

After profiling the resource, identify classes and methods needed in your adapter:

- Review the relevant Javadoc to determine which base classes and methods you can use as is and which you must extend. This javadoc is available on your Identity Manager CD in the REF/javadoc directory.
- Create a list of methods that you must write and include in the Java file based on the resource to which you are connecting.

When creating an adapter, the most time-intensive task is writing your own methods to push information from Identity Manager to the resource or to create a feed from the resource to Identity Manager.

Review the REF Kit

The Sun Resource Extension Facility Kit (REF Kit) is supplied in the /REF directory on the Identity Manager CD or install image. You can use the sample files and other tools in this REF Kit to jump-start the process of creating your own custom adapter.

The following table describes the contents of the REF Kit.

TABLE 9-12 REF Kit Components

Component	Location	Description
audit	REF/audit	Sample custom audit publishers.
exporter	REF/exporter	Warehouse interface code source code that allows you to rebuild the warehouse interface to let Data Exporter export to something other than the warehouse relational database.
javadoc	REF/javadoc	Generated javadoc that describes the classes you need to write a custom adapter. To view the javadoc, point your browser to: <code>/waveset/image/REF/javadoc/index.html</code>
lib	REF/lib	Jar files that you need to compile and test a custom adapter.
src	REF/src	Examples of commonly developed resource adapter source files and skeleton files to use as a basis for adapter development and testing, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ <code>MySQLResourceAdapter.java</code> for Database accounts ▪ <code>ExampleTableResourceAdapter.java</code> for Database tables ▪ <code>XMLResourceAdapter.java</code> for File-based accounts ▪ <code>LDAPResourceAdapter.java</code> for simple methods when developing custom LDAP resource adapters ▪ <code>LDAPResourceAdapterBase.java</code> for complex changes when developing custom LDAP resource adapters ▪ <code>AIXResourceAdapter.java</code> for developing UNIX accounts ▪ <code>SkeletonStandardResourceAdapter.java</code> for standard resources ▪ <code>SkeletonStandardAndActiveSyncResourceAdapter.java</code> for standard and Active Sync-enabled resources ▪ <code>SkeletonActiveSyncResourceAdapter.java</code> for Active Sync-only resources ▪ <code>test.SkeletonResourceTest.java</code> to create unit tests for a custom adapter
test	REF/test	Sample resource adapter test source files that you can use as a basis for a custom adapter.

TABLE 9-12 REF Kit Components (Continued)

Component	Location	Description
thirdpartysource	REF/thirdpartysource	
transactionsigner	REF/transactionsigner	Sample implementation of a transactionsigner PKCS11KeyProvider.
BeforeYouBegin.README	REF	Outlines information you must collect before you customize an adapter.
build.xml	REF	Sample Ant Build script for building, testing, and distributing a project.
Design-for-Resource-Adapters.htm	REF	Document that describes the basic architecture and design of a resource adapter.
README	REF	Document describing the Sun Identity Manager REF Kit.
Waveset.properties	REF/config	Copy of the properties file you need to test a custom adapter.

Set Up the Build Environment

This section contains instructions for setting up your build environment.

- [“On Windows” on page 165](#)
- [“On UNIX” on page 166](#)

Prerequisites:

You must install the JDK version required for your Identity Manager version. See “Supported Software and Environments” in the *Identity Manager Release Notes* for information.

After installing the JDK, you must install the REF Kit by copying the entire /REF directory to your system.

On Windows

If you are working on Microsoft Windows operating system, use the following steps to set up your build environment:

▼ To Set Up Your Build Environment in Windows

- 1 **Change directories to a new directory.**
- 2 **Create a file called `ws.bat`.**
- 3 **Add the following lines to this file:**

```
set WSHOME=<Path where REF Kit is installed>
set JAVA_HOME=<Path where JDK is installed>
set PATH=%PATH%;%JAVA_HOME%\bin
:
```

Where you set:

- JAVA_HOME to the path to where the JDK is installed.
- WSHOME to the path to where the REF Kit is installed.

4 Save and close the file.

On UNIX

If you are working on a UNIX operating system, use the following steps to set up your build environment:

▼ To Set Up Your Build Environment in UNIX

1 Change directories to a new directory.

2 Create a file called `ws.sh`.

3 Add the following lines to this file:

```
WSHOME=<path_where_REF_is_installed>  
JAVA_HOME=<path_where_JDK_is_installed>  
PATH=$JAVA_HOME/bin:$PATH
```

```
export WSHOME JAVA_HOME PATH  
:Where you set:
```

- WSHOME to the path to where the REF Kit is installed.
- JAVA_HOME to the path to where JDK is installed.

4 Save and close the file.

Writing Custom Adapters

After finishing the preparation work described in “[Preparing for Adapter Development](#)” on [page 146](#) you are ready to start writing your custom adapter.

This section describes how to write a custom adapter, including:

- “[Process Overview](#)” on [page 167](#)
- “[Rename the Skeleton File](#)” on [page 168](#)
- “[Edit the Source File](#)” on [page 168](#)
- “[Map the Attributes](#)” on [page 169](#)
- “[Specify the Identity Template](#)” on [page 170](#)
- “[Write the Adapter Methods](#)” on [page 171](#)
- “[Configure the Adapter to Support Pass-Through Authentication](#)” on [page 182](#)

- “Define the Resource Object Components” on page 184

Process Overview

The following sections provide a high-level overview of the steps you perform to create a custom adapter:

- “How To Write a Standard Resource Adapter” on page 167
- “How To Write an Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapter” on page 167

How To Write a Standard Resource Adapter

This section describes the processes to follow when creating a standard adapter or an Active Sync-enabled adapter.

Note – The steps for writing a standard adapter are slightly different based on which operating system you are using.

▼ To Create a Standard Adapter:

- 1 **Open a command window and go to the following directory:**
`\waveset\idm\adapter\src`
- 2 **Rename the `SkeletonStandardResourceAdapter.java` skeleton file to a file name of your choice. See “Rename the Skeleton File” on page 168 for more information.**
- 3 **Edit the new adapter’s source file as described in “Edit the Source File” on page 168.**
- 4 **Source the file you created previously to set up your environment:**
 - **For Windows:** Source the `ws.bat` file.
 - **For UNIX:** Source the `ws.sh` file.
- 5 **Type the following command to compile your source files:**
 - **For Windows:** `javac -d . -classpath %CLASSPATH% yourfile.java`
 - **For UNIX:** `javac -d . -classpath $CLASSPATH yourfile.java`

How To Write an Active Sync-Enabled Resource Adapter

This section describes the general steps you follow to create a custom Active Sync-Enabled adapter on the Microsoft Windows operating system.

▼ To Create a Custom Active Sync-Enabled Adapter

- 1 **Open a command window and change to the following directory:**

```
\waveset\idm\adapter\src
```

- 2 **Rename (or copy) one of the following skeleton files to a file name of your choice. See “Rename the Skeleton File” on page 168 for more information.**

- `SkeletonStandardAndActiveSyncResourceAdapter.java` (for standard and Active Sync-enabled resources)
- `SkeletonActiveSyncResourceAdapter.java` (for Active Sync-only resources)

- 3 **Edit the new adapter’s source file as described in “Edit the Source File” on page 168.**

- 4 **Source the file you created previously to set up your environment:**

- **For Windows:** Source the `ws.bat` file.
- **For UNIX:** Source the `ws.sh` file.

- 5 **Type the following command to compile your source files:**

- **For Windows:** `javac -d . -classpath %CLASSPATH% yourfile.java`
- **For UNIX:** `javac -d . -classpath $CLASSPATH yourfile.java`

Rename the Skeleton File

You must rename the skeleton adapter to a name that is appropriate for your new adapter. Perform the following actions:

- Rename the sample java file to match your new class name.
- Edit the source code to replace the sample class name with the new class name.

Edit the Source File

After renaming the skeleton file, you must edit the new adapter’s source code to replace specific text strings and to define default values you want the adapter to support.

▼ To Edit the Source File

- 1 **Search for, and replace, the following text strings to determine where you must make adapter-specific modifications in the code.**

- `change-value-here` strings indicate where you must enter a substitution.

- @todo strings indicates where you must rewrite a method for a particular scenario you are supporting.
- 2 **Name the resource adapter type.**
This name displays in the New Resources menu in the Identity Manager Administrator interface.
 - 3 **Map the incoming resource attributes to Identity Manager account attributes by replacing default values in the `prototypeXML` string with your own default values for this adapter type. For example, you might want to delete the `RA_GROUPS` attribute from your adapter type.**
See “[Map the Attributes](#)” on page 169 for more information.
 - 4 **Add or delete methods from the skeleton file. In particular, you must add Java code to support join, leave, and move operations, which are not supported in this example file.**
See “[Write the Adapter Methods](#)” on page 171 for more information.
 - 5 **After editing the adapter file, you can load it into Identity Manager.**

Map the Attributes

Generally, you set options for the adapter type by mapping the incoming resource attributes to the standard Identity Manager account attributes or by creating your own custom attributes (called *extended schema* attributes).

Your resource must define resource attributes and set default values for resource attributes for which it makes sense to have default. The resource does not have to present the `prototypeXML` object.

Note – The attributes in `SkeletonActiveSyncResourceAdapter` are mandatory. Do not delete these attribute definitions when customizing the file.

Mapping Resource Attributes to Standard Account Attributes

To map incoming resource attributes to one of the standard Identity Manager account attributes, use the syntax shown in the following example.

EXAMPLE 9-3 Mapping a Resource Attribute

```
"<AccountAttributeTypes>\n" + <AccountAttributeType name='accountId' mapName='change-value-here'
mapType='string' required='true'>\n" + "<AttributeDefinitionRef>\nt"+ <ObjectRef type='AttributeDefinition'
name='accountId'/>\n" + "</AttributeDefinitionRef>\n" + "</AccountAttributeType>\n"+
"</AccountAttributeTypes>\n"+
```

Where:

- The `<AccountAttributesTypes>` element surrounds the prototypeXML string where you map the resource attribute to the Identity Manager account attribute.
- The `<AttributeDefinitionRef>` element identifies the Identity Manager account attribute.

The following table describes the `<AttributeDefinitionRef>` element fields.

TABLE 9-13 `<AttributeDefinitionRef>` Element Fields

Element Field	Description
name	Identifies the Identity Manager account attribute to which the resource attribute is being mapped. (The left column on the resource schema page in the Identity Manager User Interface.)
mapName	Identifies the name of the incoming resource attribute. When editing the skeleton file, replace <code>change-value-here</code> with the resource attribute name.
mapType	Identifies the incoming attribute type, which can be string, int, or encrypted.

For more information on mapping resource attributes to account attributes, see [“Map the Attributes” on page 169](#).

Mapping Resource Attributes to Extended Schema Attributes

To map incoming resource attributes to attributes other than a standard Identity Manager attribute, you must create an *extended schema attribute*. The following example illustrates how to map a resource attribute to an extended schema attribute.

EXAMPLE 9-4 Mapping a Resource Attribute to an Extended Schema Attribute

```
<AccountAttributeType name='HomeDirectory' type='string' mapName='HomeDirectory'
mapType='string'>\n+ </AccountAttributeType>\n+
```

You do not have to declare an `ObjectRef` type. The `mapName` field identifies the custom account attribute `HomeDirectory`. You define the `mapType` field the same as you would when mapping an attribute to a standard account attribute.

Specify the Identity Template

You must use an identity template (or an account DN) to uniquely identify every user and group in your enterprise.

DNs display on the following Identity Manager User interface pages:

- Resources
- Distinguished Name Template
- Edit Schema

For more information about identity templates, see [“Identity Template” on page 154](#).

Write the Adapter Methods

The Identity Manager adapter interface provides general methods that you must customize to suit your particular environment. This section briefly describes:

- [“How to Write Standard Resource Adapter-Specific Methods” on page 171](#)
- [“How to Write Active Sync-Enabled Adapter Methods” on page 180](#)

How to Write Standard Resource Adapter-Specific Methods

Standard resource adapter-specific methods are specific to the resource you are updating to synchronize with Identity Manager.

The body of a resource adapter consists of resource-specific methods. Consequently, the resource adapter provides methods that are only generic placeholders for the specific methods that you will write.

This section describes how the methods used to implement operations are categorized. The information is organized into the following sections:

- [“Creating the Prototype Resource” on page 172](#)
- [“Connecting with the Resource” on page 172](#)
- [“Checking Connections and Operations” on page 172](#)
- [“Defining Features” on page 173](#)
- [“Disabling User Accounts” on page 178](#)
- [“Enabling Pass-Through Authentication for Resource Types” on page 179](#)

Note – When writing a custom adapter

- Call the `setDisabled()` method on any `WSUser` object that is returned by a custom method.
 - If the adapter implements the `AsynchronousResourceAdapter` class, then note that this adapter might be working with users that are partially initialized. (These users are created outside Identity Manager, but not fully populated with attributes.) The Provisioner does not automatically convert a Create operation to an Update operation if the `WSUser` already exists on the resource. Your resource adapter must distinguish this case.
-

Creating the Prototype Resource

The following table describes the methods used to create a Resource instance.

TABLE 9-14 Methods Used to Create a Resource Instance

Method	Description
<code>staticCreatePrototypeResource</code>	Creates a Resource instance, usually from the predefined <code>prototypeXML</code> string defined in the resource adapter. Because it is a static method, it can be called knowing only the path to the Java class which is the resource adapter.
<code>createPrototypeResource</code>	A local method that can be executed only if you already have an instance of a Java object of the resource adapter class. Typically, the implementation of <code>createPrototypeResource()</code> is to just call the <code>staticCreatePrototypeResource()</code> method. If extending an existing adapter, you can add resource attributes to specify different default values programmatically based on the super class's prototype resource.

Connecting with the Resource

The following methods are responsible for establishing connections and disconnections as an authorized user. All resource adapters must implement these methods.

- `startConnection`
- `stopConnection`

Checking Connections and Operations

`ResourceAdapterBase` provides methods that you can use to check the validity of an operation, such as whether the connection to the resource is working, before the adapter attempts the actual operation.

The following table describes methods you can use to verify that your adapter is communicating with the resource and that the authorized account has access.

TABLE 9-15 Methods Used to Check Communication

Method	Description
checkCreateAccount	<p>Checks to see if an account can be created on the resource. The following features can be checked:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Can basic connectivity to the resource be established? ■ Does the account already exist? ■ Do the account attribute values comply with all (if any) resource-specific restrictions or policies that have not been checked at a higher level? <p>This method does not check whether the account already exists. It contains the account attribute information needed to create the user account such as account name, password, and user name.</p> <p>After confirming that the account can be created, the method closes the connection to the resource.</p>
checkUpdateAccount	<p>Establishes a connection and checks to see if the account can be updated.</p> <p>This method receives a user object as input. It contains the account attribute information needed to create the user account such as account name, password, and user name.</p> <p>The user object specifies the account attributes that have been added or modified. Only these attributes are checked.</p>
checkDeleteAccount	<p>Checks to see if an account exists and can be deleted. The following features can be checked:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Can basic connectivity to the resource be established? ■ Does the account already exist? ■ Do the account attribute values comply with all (if any) resource-specific restrictions or policies that haven't been checked at a higher level? <p>This method does not check whether the account already exists. It receives a user object as input. It contains the account attribute information needed to delete the user account such as account name, password, and user name.</p> <p>After checking to see if the account can be deleted, the method closes the connection to the resource</p>

Defining Features

The `getFeatures()` method specifies which features are supported by an adapter. The features can be categorized as follows:

- General features
- Account features
- Group features
- Organizational unit features

The `ResourceAdapterBase` class defines a base implementation of the `getFeatures()` method. The Enabled in Base? column in the following tables indicates whether the feature is defined as enabled in the base implementation in `ResourceAdapterBase`.

TABLE 9-16 General Features

Feature Name	Enabled in Base?	Comments
ACTIONS	No	Indicates whether before and after actions are supported. To enable, override the <code>supportsActions</code> method with a <code>true</code> value.
RESOURCE_PASSWORD_CHANGE	No	Indicates whether the resource adapter supports password changes. To enable, override the <code>supportsResourceAccount</code> method.

TABLE 9-17 Account Features

Feature Name	Enabled in Base?	Comments
ACCOUNT_CASE_INSENSITIVE_IDS	Yes	Indicates whether user account names are case-insensitive. Override the <code>supportsCaseInsensitiveAccountIds</code> method with a <code>false</code> value to make account IDs case-sensitive.
ACCOUNT_CREATE	Yes	Indicates whether accounts can be created. Use the remove operation to disable this feature.
ACCOUNT_DELETE	Yes	Indicates whether accounts can be deleted. Use the remove operation to disable this feature.
ACCOUNT_DISABLE	No	Indicates whether accounts can be disabled on the resource. Override the <code>supportsAccountDisable</code> method with a <code>true</code> value to enable this feature.
ACCOUNT_EXCLUDE	No	Determines whether administrative accounts can be excluded from Identity Manager. Override the <code>supportsExcludedAccounts</code> method with a <code>true</code> value to enable this feature.
ACCOUNT_ENABLE	No	Indicates whether accounts can be enabled on the resource. Override the <code>supportsAccountDisable</code> method with a <code>true</code> value if accounts can be enabled on the resource.
ACCOUNT_EXPIRE_PASSWORD	Yes	Enabled if the <code>expirePassword</code> Identity Manager User attribute is present in the schema map for the adapter. Use the remove operation to disable this feature.
ACCOUNT_GUID	No	If a GUID is present on the resource, use the put operation to enable this feature.

TABLE 9-17 Account Features (Continued)

Feature Name	Enabled in Base?	Comments
ACCOUNT_ITERATOR	Yes	Indicates whether the adapter uses an account iterator. Use the remove operation to disable this feature.
ACCOUNT_LIST	Yes	Indicates whether the adapter can list accounts. Use the remove operation to disable this feature.
ACCOUNT_LOGIN	Yes	Indicates whether a user can login to an account. Use the remove operation if logins can be disabled.
ACCOUNT_PASSWORD	Yes	Indicates whether an account requires a password. Use the remove operation if passwords can be disabled.
ACCOUNT_RENAME	No	Indicates whether an account can be renamed. Use the put operation to enable this feature.
ACCOUNT_REPORTS_DISABLED	No	Indicates whether the resource reports if an account is disabled. Use the put operation to enable this feature.
ACCOUNT_UNLOCK	No	Indicates whether an account can be unlocked. Use the put operation if accounts can be unlocked.
ACCOUNT_UPDATE	Yes	Indicates whether an account can be modified. Use the remove operation if accounts cannot be updated.
ACCOUNT_USER_PASSWORD_ON_CHANGE	No	Indicates whether the user's current password must be specified when changing the password. Use the put operations if the user's current password is required.

TABLE 9-18 Group Features

Feature Name	Enabled in Base?	Comments
GROUP_CREATE, GROUP_DELETE, GROUP_UPDATE	No	Indicates whether groups can be created, deleted, or updated. Use the put operation to if these features are supported on the resource.

TABLE 9-19 Organizational Unit Features

Feature Name	Enabled in Base?	Comments
ORGUNIT_CREATE ORGUNIT_DELETEORG UNIT_UPDATE	No	Indicates whether organizational units can be created, deleted, or updated. Use the put operation to if these features are supported on the resource.

If your custom adapter overrides the `ResourceAdapterBase` implementation of the `getFeatures` method, add code similar to the following:

```

public GenericObject getFeatures() {
    GenericObject genObj = super.getFeatures();
    genObj.put(Features.ACCOUNT_RENAME, Features.ACCOUNT_RENAME);
    genObj.remove(Features.ACCOUNT_UPDATE, Features.ACCOUNT_UPDATE);
    .. other features supported by this Resource Adapter ...
    return genObj;
}

```

To disable a feature by overriding a different method (such as `supportsActions`) add code similar to the following:

```

public boolean supportsActions() {
    return true;
}

```

The following tables describe the methods used to create, delete, and update accounts on Resources.

TABLE 9–20 Creating Accounts on the Resource

Method	Description
<code>realCreate()</code>	Creates the account on the resource. Receives a user object as input, and contains the account attribute information needed to create the user account (such as account name, password, and user name)

TABLE 9–21 Deleting Accounts on the Resource

Method	Description
<code>realDelete()</code>	Deletes one or more accounts on the resource. Receives a user object or list of user objects as input. By default, this method creates a connection, calls <code>realDelete</code> , closes the connection for each user object in the list.

TABLE 9–22 Updating Accounts on the Resource

Method	Description
<code>realUpdate()</code>	Updates a subset of the account attributes. By default, this method creates a connection, calls <code>realUpdate</code> , and closes the connection for each user object in the list. NOTE: User account attributes from the resource are merged with any new changes from Identity Manager.

TABLE 9–23 Getting User Information

Method	Description
<code>getUser()</code>	Retrieves information from the resource about user attributes. Receives a user object as input (typically with only an account identity set), and returns a new user object with values set for any attribute defined in resource schema map.

You can use list methods to establish processes that adapters use to retrieve user information from the resource.

TABLE 9–24 List Methods

Method	Description
<code>getAccountIterator()</code>	Used to discover or import all the users from a resource. Implements the Account Iterator interface to iterate over all users of a resource.
<code>listAllObjects()</code>	Given a resource object type (such as <code>accountID</code> or <code>group</code>), returns a list of that type from the resource. Implement this method to generate lists that are used by the resource, such as a list of resource groups or distribution lists. This method is called from the user form (not called by provisioning engine).

Best Practice

When writing an `AccountIterator` interface implementation for a custom adapter, try to do the following:

- Have the `AccountIterator.next()` method return a user that contains all attributes in the schema map when `getAccountIterator()` is called. The reconciler will trim the schema (in a cloned resource used for the `getAccountIterator()` request) to request only those attributes the reconciler needs. Generally, the reconciler needs only the `accountId` attribute; but there are cases when the reconciler has additional attributes in the schema. Other `getAccountIterator()` users, such as `Load From Resource`, potentially need all of the schema attributes.

Try to create a “smart” adapter that does the right thing based on what is in the schema map. If your adapter can just list the accounts and get the requested information, then the adapter should just do those tasks. Otherwise, the adapter might have to fetch an account to get the required attributes. Adapters that are not smart always get all the attributes.

- Make your adapter as scalable as possible, which generally means the adapter does not list or fetch all of the accounts at once. Instead, your adapter should iterate over the accounts as the `AccountIterator.next()` method is called. Avoid having your adapter do much in the `AccountIterator` constructor.

The following example shows code for retrieving information from a resource and converting that information into information that Identity Manager can work with.

Resource Adapters: Retrieving Information on a Resource

```
public WSUser getUser(WSUser user)
    throws WavesetException {
    String identity = getIdentity(user);
    WSUser newUser = null;
    try {
        startConnection();
        Map attributes = fetchUser(user);
        if (attributes != null) {
            newUser = makeWavesetUser(attributes);
        }
    } finally {
        stopConnection();
    }
    return newUser;
}
```

TABLE 9–25 Enable and Disable Methods

Method	Description
<code>supportsAccountDisable()</code>	Returns true or false depending on whether the resource supports native account disable.
<code>realEnable()</code>	Implements native calls that are needed to enable the user account on the resource.
<code>realDisable()</code>	Implements native calls that are needed to disable the user account on the resource.

Disabling User Accounts

You can disable an account by using the disable utilities supported by the resource or the account disable utility provided by Identity Manager.

Note – Use native disable utilities whenever possible.

- **Native support for disabling an account:** Certain resources provide a separate flag that, when set, prevents users from logging in. Example utilities include User Manager for Active Directory Users and Computers for Active Directory, and ConsoleOne or Netware Administrator for NDS/Netware. When an account is enabled, the user's original password is still valid. You can determine whether native support for account disable is available on your resource by implementing the `supportsAccountDisable` method.

- **Identity Manager disable utility:** If the resource does not support disabling an account, or supports disable by means of resetting the user's password, the Identity Manager provisioning engine disables the account. You can perform the disable by setting the user account to a randomly generated, non-displayed, non-retained password. When the account is enabled, the system randomly generates a new password, which is displayed in the Identity Manager Administrative interface or emailed to the user.

Enabling Pass-Through Authentication for Resource Types

Use the following general steps to enable pass-through authentication in a resource type:

▼ To Enable Pass-Through Authentication on a Resource Type

- 1 **Ensure that the adapter's `getFeatures()` method returns `ResourceAdapter.ACCOUNT_LOGIN` as a supported feature.**

- If your custom adapter overrides the `ResourceAdapterBase` implementation, add the following code.

```
public GenericObject getFeatures() {
    GenericObject genObj = super.getFeatures();
    genObj.put(Features.ACCOUNT_RENAME, Features.ACCOUNT_RENAME);
    .. other features supported by this Resource Adapter ...
    return genObj;
}
```

- If your custom adapter does not override the `getFeatures()` implementation in the `ResourceAdapterBase` class, it will inherit the `getFeatures()` implementation that is exported for `ACCOUNT_LOGIN` by default.

- 2 **Add the `<LoginConfigEntry>` element to the adapter's prototypeXML.**

- 3 **Implement the adapter's `authenticate()` method.**

The `authenticate()` method authenticates the user against the resource by using the authentication property name/value pairs provided in the `loginInfo` map. If authentication succeeds, be sure that the authenticated unique ID is returned in the `WavesetResult` by adding a result as follows:

```
result.addResult(Constants.AUTHENTICATED_IDENTITY, accountId);
```

If authentication succeeded, but the user's password was expired, then in addition to the identity added above, also add the password expired indicator to the result to be returned. This will ensure that the user will be forced to change their password on at least resource upon next login to Identity Manager.

```
result.addResult(Constants.RESOURCE_PASSWORD_EXPIRED, new Boolean(true));
```

If authentication fails (because the user name or password is invalid), then:

```
throw new WavesetException("Authentication failed for " + uid + ".");
```

How to Write Active Sync-Enabled Adapter Methods

Active Sync-specific methods provide the mechanism for updating Identity Manager, which is the primary purpose of your Active Sync-enabled adapter. These methods are based on pulling information from the authoritative resource. In addition, you use these methods to start, stop, and schedule the adapter.

The methods you are going to write in this section of the adapter are based on generic methods supplied with the skeleton adapter file. You must edit some of these methods, which are categorized by task.

The following sections describe general guidelines for creating Active Sync-enabled adapter methods:

- [“Initializing and Scheduling the Adapter” on page 180](#)
- [“Polling the Resource” on page 180](#)
- [“Storing and Retrieving Adapter Attributes” on page 181](#)
- [“Updating the Identity Manager Repository” on page 182](#)
- [“Shutting Down the Adapter” on page 182](#)

Initializing and Scheduling the Adapter

You initialize and schedule the adapter by implementing the `init()` and `poll()` methods.

The `init()` method is called when the adapter manager loads the adapter. There are two methods for loading the adapter:

- The manager can load the adapter at system startup if the adapter startup type is automatic.
- An administrator loads the adapter by clicking Start on the Resources page if the adapter startup type is manual.

In the initialization process, the adapter can perform its own initialization. Typically, this involves initializing logging (with the `ActiveSyncUtil` class), and any adapter-specific initialization such as registering with a resource to receive update events.

If an exception is thrown, the adapter is shut down and unloaded.

Polling the Resource

All of the adapter’s work is performed by the `poll()` method. Scheduling the adapter requires setting up a `poll()` method to search for and retrieve changed information on the resource.

This method is the main method of the Active Sync-enabled adapter. The adapter manager calls the `poll()` method to poll the remote resource for changes. The call then converts the changes into IAPI calls and posts them back to a server. This method is called on its own thread and can block for as long as needed.

It should call its `ActiveSyncUtil` instance's `isStopRequested` method and return when true. Check `isStopRequested` as part of the loop condition when looping through changes.

To configure defaults for polling, you can set the polling-related resource attributes in the adapter file. Setting these polling-related attributes provides administrators with a means to later use the Identity Manager interface to set the start time and date for the poll interval and the length of the interval.

Scheduling Parameters

You use the following scheduling parameters in Active Sync-enabled adapters:

- `RA_SCHEDULE_INTERVAL`
- `RA_SCHEDULE_INTERVAL_COUNT`
- `RA_SCHEDULE_START_TIME`
- `RA_SCHEDULE_START_DATE`

See [Table 9–6](#) for a description of these parameters.

Scheduling Parameters in the `prototypeXML`

The scheduling parameters are present in the string constant `ActiveSync.ACTIVE_SYNC_STD_RES_ATTRS_XML`, along with all other general Active Sync-related resource attributes.

The following table describes the usage of scheduling parameters using some sample polling scenarios.

TABLE 9–26 Sample Polling Scenarios

Polling Scenario	Parameters
Daily at 2 A.M.	<code>Interval = day, count =1, start_time=0200</code>
Four times daily	<code>Interval=hour, count=6.</code>
Poll once every two weeks on Thursday at 5 P.M	<code>Interval = week, count=2, start date = 20020705 (a Thursday), time = 17:00.</code>

Storing and Retrieving Adapter Attributes

Most Active Sync-enabled adapters are also standard adapters, where a single Java class both extends `ResourceAdapterBase` (or `AgentResourceAdapter`) and implements the Active Sync interface.

The following example shows how to retrieve the attribute and pass the update through to the base.

EXAMPLE 9-5 Attribute Retrieval and Update

```
public Object getAttributeValue(String name) throws WavesetException {
    return getResource().getResourceAttributeVal(name); }
public void setAttributeValue(String name, Object value) throws WavesetException {
    getResource().setResourceAttributeVal(name,value); }
```

Updating the Identity Manager Repository

When an update is received, the adapter uses the IAPI classes, notably IAPIFactory to:

- Collect the changed attributes
- Map the changes to a unique Identity Manager object
- Update that object with the changed information

Mapping the Changes to the Identity Manager Object

Using the Active Sync event parameter configurator for the resource, IAPIFactory.getIAPI constructs an IAPI object, either IAPIUser or IAPIProcess from a map of changed attributes. If an exclusion rule (iapi_create, iapi_delete, or iapi_update) is configured for the resource, IAPIFactory checks if the account is excluded. If a non-null object is created and returned by the Factory, the adapter can modify the IAPI object (for example, by adding a logger), then submits it.

When the object is submitted, the form associated with the resource is expanded with the object view before the view is checked in. For more information about forms and views, see [Deployment Reference](#).

In `SkeletonActiveSyncResourceAdapter`, this process is handled in the `buildEvent` and `processUpdates` methods.

Shutting Down the Adapter

No system requirements are associated with adapter shutdown. Identity Manager calls the shutdown method, which is an opportunity for your adapter to cleanup any objects still in use from the polling loop.

Configure the Adapter to Support Pass-Through Authentication

Identity Manager uses pass-through authentication to grant users and administrators access through one or more different passwords. Identity Manager manages pass-through authentication through the implementation of:

- Login applications (collection of login module groups)
- Login module groups (ordered set of login modules)
- Login modules (sets authentication for each assigned resource and specify one of several success requirements for authentication)

You configure a custom adapter to support pass-through authentication by

- Implementing the `authenticate()` method appropriately
- Including the `account.LOGIN` feature in the `getFeatures()` method map (`com.waveset.adapter.ResourceAdapter.ACCOUNT_LOGIN`)
- Including the `<LoginConfigEntry>` section in the resource's prototypeXML

When configuring a custom resource adapter to support an interactive login, you must enable the adapter to request additional information from a user during log in and after that user submits the initial login page.

The adapter `authenticate()` method controls whether the login becomes interactive. The `authenticate()` method's return values trigger the interactive login so the `authenticate()` is called again with the results of the next login page until the `authenticate()` method decides the login

- Fails by throwing an exception
- Succeeds by returning the account ID of the authenticated account in the `WavesetResult` as usual

To be interactive, the adapter must return a `WavesetResult` that

- *Does not* contain `ResultItems` with a `Constants.AUTHENTICATED_GUID` type or `Constants.AUTHENTICATED_IDENTITY` type
- *Does* contain `ResultItems` that are used to dynamically build a form for the next page of the login

Each `ResultItem` corresponds to a field in the form. `ResultItems` must have the `Constants.CONTINUE_AUTHENTICATION_ATTR` type with values in the following format:

```
label|attrName|displayType|prompt|'isId'
```

Where

- *label* is a string containing a label or none.
- *attrName* is the login attribute name that is passed into the next `authenticate()` method call as a key in the `loginInfo` `HashMap`.
- *displayType* describes the type of form field to use. *displayType* values include
 - `text`
 - `secret`

- label
- checkbox

prompt corresponds to the title or label of the form field.

- *isId* is an optional string.

If you use the *isId* string, the value of the form field is added to the `loginInfo` `HashMap` with the key `Constants.ACCOUNT_ID` and the value of the field.

The following `ResultItem` types are also “round-tripped” and returned in the `loginInfo` `HashMap` on the next `authenticate()` call:

- `Constants.CONTINUE_AUTHENTICATION_ACCOUNT_HANDLE` keep track of which user or account is in the process of being authenticated.
- `Constants.CONTINUE_AUTHENTICATION_PREVIOUS_ATTR` remove previous authentication attributes from the `loginInfo`, so the `loginInfo` does not contain an “old” authentication `attr`.

Define the Resource Object Components

This section describes how to define the following resource object components:

- [“Defining Resource Object Classes” on page 184](#)
- [“Defining Resource ObjectTypes” on page 185](#)
- [“Defining Resource Object Features” on page 187](#)
- [“Defining Resource Object Attributes” on page 188](#)
- [“Defining Resource Forms” on page 189](#)

Defining Resource Object Classes

Object classes are handled differently for LDAP-based resource objects than for other resource objects.

LDAP-Based Resource Objects

LDAP-based resource objects can consist of more than one LDAP object class, where each object class is an extension of its parent object class. However, within LDAP, the complete set of these object classes is viewed and managed as a single object type within LDAP.

To manage this type of resource object within Identity Manager, include the XML element `<ObjectClasses>` within the `<ObjectType>` definition. The `<ObjectClasses>` element allows you to define the set of object classes that is associated with this `<ObjectType>` as well as the relationship of classes to each other.

Non-LDAP-Based Resource Objects

For non-LDAP-based resource objects, you can use the `<ObjectType>` to represent information other than the resource object type name.

In the following example, the `primary` attribute defines the object class to be used when creating and updating an object of this type. In this case, `inetorgperson` is the object class that is defined as the primary one because it is a subclass of the other listed object classes. The `operator` attribute specifies whether the list of object classes should be treated as one (logical AND) or treated as unique classes (logical OR) when listing or getting an object of this type. In this case, Identity Manager performs an AND operation on these object classes prior to any list or get requests for this object type.

EXAMPLE 9-6 Using `inetorgperson` Object Class

```
<ObjectClasses primary='inetorgperson' operator='AND'>\n"+
<ObjectClass name='person'>\n"+ <ObjectClass name='organizationalPerson'>\n"+
<ObjectClass name='inetorgperson'>\n"+ </ObjectClasses>\n"+
```

In the next example, all requests to create and/or update resource objects of this type are done using the `groupOfUniqueNames` object class. All list and get requests will query for all objects whose object class is either `groupOfNames` or `groupOfUniqueNames`.

EXAMPLE 9-7 Using `groupOfUniqueNames` Object Class

```
<ObjectClasses primary='groupOfUniqueNames' operator='OR'>\n"+
<ObjectClass name='groupOfNames'>\n"+ <ObjectClass name='groupOfUniqueNames'>\n"+
</ObjectClasses>\n"+
```

In this example, only one object class is defined so all create, get, list, and update operations are performed using object class `organizationalUnit`.

EXAMPLE 9-8 Using `organizationalUnit` Object Class

```
<ObjectClasses operator='AND'>\n"+ <ObjectClass name='organizationalUnit'>\n"+ </ObjectClasses>\n"+
```

Because there is only one object class, you can exclude the `<ObjectClasses>` section. If you exclude the `<ObjectClasses>` section, the object class defaults to the `<ObjectType>` name attribute value. However, if you want the object type name to differ from the resource object class name, you must include the `<ObjectClasses>` section with the single `<ObjectClass>` entry.

Defining Resource ObjectTypes

Resource *Object types* uniquely define a specific type of resource, and you define object types in the adapter's `prototypeXML` string.

The XML `<ObjectTypes>` element is a container within the adapter's prototypeXML string that contains one or more object type definitions to be managed on that resource. This `<ObjectTypes>` element fully describes the resource-specific object to Identity Manager, including the following:

- A list of specific object classes contained in the object type (required only for LDAP-compliant directories)
- A list of supported features
- A list of object type-specific attributes that are available within Identity Manager for editing and searching

The following table describes the supported attributes of the `<ObjectType>` element.

TABLE 9-27 Supported `<ObjectType>` Element Attributes

Attribute	Description
name	Defines the name by which this object type is displayed and referred to within Identity Manager (required).
icon	Defines the name of the .gif file to display in the Identity Manager interface for objects of this type. You must install this .gif file in <code>idm/applet/images</code> for use by Identity Manager.
container	Defines whether this type of resource object can contain other resource objects of the same type or of a different type. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ If true, this resource object type can contain other resource objects. ■ If false, this resource object type cannot contain other resource objects.

The following example shows `ObjectType` definitions:

EXAMPLE 9-9 Example `ObjectType` Definitions

```
static final String prototypeXml =
"<Resource name='Skeleton' class= 'com.waveset.adapter.sample.SkeletonStandardResourceAdapter'
typeString='Skeleton of a resource adapter' typeDisplayString='"+Messages.RESTYPE_SKELETON+"'>\n"+
  "<ObjectTypes>\n"+
  "<ObjectType name='Group' icon='group'>\n"+
... other content defined below will go here ...
  "</ObjectType>\n"+
  "<ObjectType name='Role' icon='ldap_role'>\n"+
... other content defined below will go here ...
  "</ObjectType>\n"+
  "<ObjectType name='Organization' icon='folder_with_org' container='true'>\n"+
... other content defined below will go here ...
  "</ObjectType>\n"+
  "</ObjectTypes>\n"+
```

Defining Resource Object Features

The `<ObjectFeatures>` section specifies a list of one or more features supported by this object type, where each object feature is directly tied to the implementation of the associated object type method in the resource adapter.

Each `ObjectFeature` definition must contain the `name` attribute, which specifies a feature name. The `create` and `update` features can specify a `form` attribute, which defines the resource form used to process `create` and `update` features. If you do not specify a `form` attribute, Identity Manager processes the `create` and `update` features with the same form used by all resources of a given type.

The following table describes the object feature mappings.

TABLE 9–28 Object Feature Mappings

Object Feature	Method	Supports Form Attribute?
create	createObject	Yes
delete	deleteObject	No
find	listObjects	No
list	listObjects	No
rename	updateObject	No
saveas	createObject	No
update	updateObject	Yes
view	getObject	No

In the following example, the `<ObjectFeatures>` section includes all supported object features. Your resource adapter can support all of these features or just a subset of features. The more object features your adapter supports, the richer the object management function within Identity Manager.

EXAMPLE 9–10 `<ObjectFeatures>` Section Including all Supported Object Features

```
<ObjectFeatures>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='create' form='My Create Position Form'/>
  <ObjectFeature name='update' form='My Update Position Form'/>
  <ObjectFeature name='create'/>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='delete'/>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='rename'/>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='saveas'/>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='find'/>\n"+
  <ObjectFeature name='list'/>\n"+
```

EXAMPLE 9-10 <ObjectFeatures> Section Including all Supported Object Features *(Continued)*

```
<ObjectFeature name='view'/>\n"+
</ObjectFeatures>\n"+
```

Defining Resource Object Attributes

The <ObjectAttributes> section specifies the set of attributes to be managed and queried in Identity Manager. Each <ObjectAttribute> element name should be the same as the native resource attribute name. Unlike user attributes in Identity Manager, no attribute mapping is specified. Use only the native attribute names.

The following table describes attributes that are required for <ObjectAttributes>.

TABLE 9-29 Required Attributes for <ObjectAttributes>

Attribute	Description
idAttr	The value of this attribute should be the resource object attribute name that uniquely identifies this object within the resource's object namespace (for example, dn, uid)
displayNameAttr	The value of this attribute should be the resource object attribute name whose value is the name you want displayed when objects of this type are viewed within Identity Manager (for example, cn, samAccountName).
descriptionAttr	(Optional) This value of this attribute should be the resource object attribute name whose value you want displayed in the Description column of the Resources page.

The following example shows an <ObjectAttributes> section defined in an <ObjectType>.

EXAMPLE 9-11 <ObjectAttributes> Section Defined in an <ObjectType>

```
<ObjectAttributes idAttr='dn' displayNameAttr='cn' descriptionAttr='
  description'>\n"+
  <ObjectAttribute name='cn' type='string'/>\n"+
  <ObjectAttribute name='description' type='string'/>\n"+
  <ObjectAttribute name='owner' type='distinguishedname'
namingAttr='cn'/>\n"+
  <ObjectAttribute name='uniqueMember' type='dn' namingAttr='cn' />\n"+
</ObjectAttributes>\n"+
```

The following table describes the <ObjectAttribute> attributes.

TABLE 9-30 <ObjectAttribute> Attributes

Attribute	Description
name	Identifies the resource object type attribute name (required)
type	Identifies the type of object. Valid types include <code>string</code> or <code>distinguishedname / "dn"</code> (defaults to <code>string</code>)
namingAttr	If object type is <code>distinguishedname</code> or <code>dn</code> , this value specifies the attribute whose value should be used to display an instance of this object type referred to by the <code>dn</code> within Identity Manager

Note – The methods in the resource adapter object type implementation are responsible for coercing all string values into the appropriate type based on the resource attribute name.

Defining Resource Forms

You must provide the following resource forms:

- A `ResourceForm` named `<resource type> Create <object type> Form` for each resource `<ObjectType>` that supports the Create feature.
For example, *AIX Create Group Form* or *LDAP Create Organizational Unit Form*
- A `ResourceForm` named `<resource type> Update <object type> Form` for each resource `<ObjectType>` that supports the Update feature.
For example, *AIX Update Group Form* or *LDAP Update Organizational Unit Form*

You can also assign an *optional* form that processes incoming data before storing it in Identity Manager. This resource form is a mechanism that transforms incoming data from the schema map and applies the transformed data to the User view. The sample form also performs actions, such as enabling and disabling an account, that are based on specific incoming data values such as employee status.

The following table describes attributes contained in the top-level namespace.

Note – All values are strings unless otherwise specified.

TABLE 9-31 Top-Level Namespace Attributes

Attribute	Description
<code><objectType>.resourceType</code>	Identity Manager resource type name (for example, LDAP, Active Directory)
<code><objectType>.resourceName</code>	Identity Manager resource name

TABLE 9-31 Top-Level Namespace Attributes (Continued)

Attribute	Description
<code><objectType>.resourceId</code>	Identity Manager resource ID
<code><objectType>.objectType</code>	Resource-specific object type (for example, Group)
<code><objectType>.objectName</code>	Name of resource object (for example, cn or samAccountName)
<code><objectType>.objectId</code>	Fully qualified name of resource object (for example, dn)
<code><objectType>.requestor</code>	ID of user requesting view
<code><objectType>.attributes</code>	Resource object attribute name/value pairs (object)
<code><objectType>.organization</code>	Identity Manager member organization
<code><objectType>.attrsToGet</code>	List of object type specific attributes to return when requesting an object through <code>checkoutView</code> or <code>getView</code> (list)
<code><objectType>.searchContext</code>	Context used to search for non-fully qualified names in form input
<code><objectType>.searchAttributes</code>	List of resource object type-specific attribute names that will be used to search within the specified <code>searchContext</code> for names input to the form (list).
<code><objectType>.searchTimeLimit</code>	Maximum time spent searching where <code><objectType></code> is the lowercase name of a resource specific object type. For example, group, organizationalunit, organization.
<code><objectType>.attributes<resource attribute name></code>	Used to get or set the value of specified resource attribute (for example, <code><objectType>.attributes.cn</code> , where <code>cn</code> is the resource attribute name). When resource attributes are distinguished names, the name returned when getting the value is the value of the <code>namingAttr</code> specified in the <code><ObjectAttribute></code> section of the <code><ObjectType></code> description.

Installing Custom Adapters

▼ To Install a Customized Resource Adapter

- 1 If necessary, create the following directory:

```
idm/WEB-INF/classes/package_path
```

Where `package_path` is the package where your class is defined. For example,

```
com/waveset/adapter/sample
```

- 2 Copy your `NewResourceAdapter.class` file into the directory you just created.

- 3 **Create a gif image that is 18x18 pixels and 72 DPI in size to represent your adapter. Identity Manager displays this .gif file image next to the resource name on the List Resources page.**
You must use the following format when naming your .gif file:
YourAdapterName.gif
You must replace any spaces in your adapter name with underscores. For example, look at some of the existing adapter names in
`\waveset\idm\web\applet\images`
- 4 **Copy the .gif file to idm/applet/images.**
- 5 **Stop and restart the application server. For information about working with application servers, see Installation Guide.**
- 6 **Create an HTML help file for your resource.**

Note – The `idm.jar` in the `com/waveset/msgcat/help/resources` directory contains example help files.

See Deployment Reference for information about including online help with an application.

- 7 **From the Managed Resources page of the Administrator interface, click the Custom Adapter button and enter the full class name of your adapter class. For example**
`com.waveset.adapter.sample.NewResourceAdapter`
- 8 **Create a resource in Identity Manager using your adapter.**
- 9 **Ensure your native managed system is operational.**
- 10 **Test the connectivity of your new Identity Manager resource, as described in “[Checking Connections and Operations](#)” on page 172.**

Testing Custom Adapters

After writing a custom resource adapter, you must test the validity of that adapter. In particular, you must test the connection to the resource.

Topics covered in this section include:

- “Unit Testing Your Adapter” on page 192
- “Compatibility Testing Your Adapter” on page 192

Unit Testing Your Adapter

Use the following steps to unit-test the validity of a custom adapter (in particular, to test the connection to the resource):

▼ To Unit Test Your Adapter

- 1 Save the adapter.
- 2 Run unit tests on that adapter from your own machine.
- 3 Load the adapter into Identity Manager.
- 4 Test the adapter in Identity Manager, as follows:
 - a. Log into the Identity Manager Administrator interface.
 - b. Click the **Resources > List Resources** tabs.
 - c. Click **Start** on the **List Resources** page.

The Start button is enabled only if the resource start-up type is Automatic or Manual.

Compatibility Testing Your Adapter

Writing and maintaining a custom resource adapter can be a very complex process. Developers commonly discover that their custom adapters do not perform as expected, or that the adapters do not perform the functions expected by Identity Manager. Even well-written resource adapters will sometimes not work well after the external resource has been upgraded.

Identity Manager provides a compatibility testing mechanism that you can use to verify the quality of a custom resource adapter. This tester

- Makes it easier for you to write, publish, and maintain a custom adapter
- Makes it easier for you to run the adapter and interpret results
- Focuses on testing the adapter's supported features as fully as possible in an adapter-independent manner
- Simplifies troubleshooting an adapter

This section describes how to use Identity Manager's Compatibility Test Suite. The information is organized as follows:

- [“How the Compatibility Test Suite Works” on page 193](#)
- [“How to Run the Compatibility Tests” on page 193](#)

- “Example 1: Using the Default DataProvider to Run Compatibility Tests” on page 195
- “Example 2: Adding More Data” on page 197
- “Example 3: Finishing the Test Configuration” on page 199
- “Example 4: Executing Javascript or Beanshell Script” on page 202
- “Example 5: Running Tests from Inside the Web Container” on page 205

How the Compatibility Test Suite Works

Identity Manager’s Compatibility Test Suite performs a set of standard tests to check the adapter’s supported features. If a particular test requires a feature not provided by the adapter, Identity Manager skips that test.

The Compatibility Test Suite requires certain information, such as a valid user name and password to run a compatibility test on a resource adapter. You can typically use the standard *DataProvider* (provided with Identity Manager) to supply the data required for the test.

Note – For special circumstances, such as when you want to provide information in a class instead of as an expression in XML, you can write a custom *DataProvider*.

How to Run the Compatibility Tests

▼ To Run the Identity Manager Compatibility Test Suite

1 Open a command window.

2 At the command prompt, type the `lh` command using the following format:

```
$WSHOME/bin/lh com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite [Options] [testName]
```

Where:

- [options] include:
 - -h: Use to access usage information

For example:

Usage: `CompatibilitySuite [arguments]`

Valid arguments:

Argument	Description
<code>-propsFile value</code>	Path to the properties file
<code>-formatter value</code>	Formatter to use for formatting output of tests

Argument	Description
-user <i>value</i>	Name of user to execute test as
-pass <i>value</i>	Plain text password used to log the user on
-import <i>value</i>	Comma separated list of files (on server) to import
-toDir <i>value</i>	Directory to put test output in
-v	Echoes all arguments passed in to the screen
-h	Displays the usage message

- -propsFile *file*: Use to specify a properties file name.
- -formatter *type,path*: Use to specify XML, HTML, or plain text and a path in which to put this file.
- [*testName*] is a comma-separated list of the tests to run.

The following properties control how tests are executed:

Property	Description
adapter	Classname of the adapter to test
dp	Name of a custom DataProvider
importScript	Comma-separated list of paths to the scripts to execute Note: These scripts return a string of imported XML.
ns	DataProvider namespace
includedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to include
excludedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to exclude
import	Comma-separated list of files to import

You can specify these properties directly from the command line, or add them to a properties file specified from the command line. For example,

```
lh -DpropName=propValue
```

Where properties conflict, properties in the property file specified by propsFile are used.

Note – When you use the [*testName*] command, the Compatibility Test Suite ignores the includedTests and excludedTests options.

In most cases, the framework provided by Identity Manager is flexible enough to test the resource adapter. However, you can easily extend the functionality in two places if necessary:

- You can implement the `DataProvider` interface to create a custom `DataProvider`. A custom `DataProvider` allows data to come from any source.
- You can implement the `CompatibilityHelper` interface to provide a `CompatibilityHelper`. A `CompatibilityHelper` provides a way to initialize a resource before running tests.

See the Javadoc for more information about implementing these interfaces and the required naming conventions.

Example 1: Using the Default `DataProvider` to Run Compatibility Tests

This example illustrates how to run compatibility tests on a `SimulatedResourceAdapter` using the default `DataProvider`.

Prepare the Test

Use the following steps to prepare the compatibility tests.

▼ To Prepare the Test

1 Set up the following files:

```
sample/compat/example.1/example.properties
```

```
sample/compat/example.1/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
```

Note – The default path to the simulated resource in `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig` is `/tmp/mySimulatedResource.xml`.

You can edit this path if you want to specify a different location.

2 Before executing the example, copy `ant-junit.jar` from Apache ant 1.6.5 to your `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib` directory.

Execute the Test

Use the following steps to execute the compatibility tests.

▼ To Execute the Compatibility Test

1 Open a command window.

2 At the prompt, type

```
cd $WSHOME
```

```
bin/lh com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite -propsFile
sample/compat/example.1/example.properties
```

Your output should look similar to the following example:

```
TestSuite: com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite
Starting internal database server ...
DB Server @ jdbc:hsqldb:hsq://127.0.0.1:57022/idm
Importing file sample/compat/example.1/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
'Create(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Create)' skipped (unknown)
'Authenticate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.AuthenticateUser)' skipped (unknown)
>DeleteExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'UpdateExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.UpdateExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'RenameExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.RenameExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'EnableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.EnableExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'DisableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DisableExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'Iterate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Iterate)' skipped (unknown)
>DeleteMissing(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteMissing)' passed (77 ms)
```

```
Tests run: 9, failures: 0, errors: 0, skipped: 8, Time elapsed: 10864 ms
```

What Happened

In [“Execute the Test” on page 195](#), the `lh` command runs the compatibility test with the following argument:

```
-propsFile sample/compat/example.1/example.properties
```

Both the adapter and ns properties are required to run the test.

- The adapter property provides the adapter class name to be tested.
- The ns property provides a namespace for the test.

The DataProvider can use the namespace to set up multiple configurations.

[“Execute the Test” on page 195](#) also uses the `import` property, which imports a list of files into the repository. The `import` property is similar to `lh import filename`.

When you start the compatibility test, the tester retrieves the adapter and ns properties from the specified properties.

The default DataProvider retrieves data from the extension element of a `namespace#TestData` configuration object, which in this example was `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig#TestData`.

Note – If you do not specify a `DataProvider` when setting up a test, Identity Manager used the default `DataProvider`.

The `DataProvider` retrieves this `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig#TestData` configuration object from the repository.

To get the configuration object into the repository, you must define the object in the following file, which is specified in the `import` property:

```
sample/compat/example.1/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
```

To simplify configuration in “[Execute the Test](#)” on page 195, only one test was run with the `includedTests=DeleteMissing` parameter.

Note – See the Javadoc for more information about which parameters are available and which parameters are required for the different tests.

Example 2: Adding More Data

To run the creation tests, and other tests that create users, you must add more data to the configuration object. In this next example, you must use the default `DataProvider` again and import an XML file.

Prepare the Test

Use the following steps to prepare the compatibility tests.

▼ To Prepare the Test

1 Set up the following files:

```
sample/compat/example.2/example.properties
```

```
sample/compat/example.2/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
```

Note – The default path to the simulated resource in `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig` is `/tmp/mySimulatedResource.xml`.

You can edit this path if you want to specify a different location.

2 Before executing the example, copy `ant-junit.jar` from Apache ant 1.6.5 to your

`$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib` directory.

Execute the Test

Use the following steps to execute the compatibility tests.

▼ To Execute the Test

1 Open a command window.

2 At the prompt, type

```
cd $WSHOME
```

```
bin/lh com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite -propsFile
sample/compat/example.2/example.properties
```

Your output should look similar to the following example:

```
TestSuite: com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite
Starting internal database server ...
DB Server @ jdbc:hsqldb:hsq://127.0.0.1:57022/idm
Importing file ./sample/compat/example.2/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
'Authenticate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.AuthenticateUser)' skipped (unknown)
'UpdateExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.UpdateExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'RenameExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.RenameExisting)' skipped (unknown)
'Iterate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Iterate)' skipped (unknown)
>DeleteMissing(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteMissing)' passed (15 ms)
'EnableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.EnableExisting)' passed (259 ms)
'DisableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DisableExisting)' passed (7 ms)
>DeleteExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteExisting)' passed (3 ms)
'Create(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Create)' passed (3 ms)
```

```
Tests run: 9, failures: 0, errors: 0, skipped: 4, Time elapsed: 10178 ms
```

What Happened

You requested additional tests by setting the following property in the properties file:

```
IncludedTests=DeleteMissing,Create,EnableExisting,DisableExisting,DeleteExisting
```

These tests required more data from the `DataProvider`.

To provide this new data, several changes were made to the configuration object specified by `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml`.

The `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml` file added a `create` attribute containing a username, password, and list of user attributes. The default `DataProvider` uses the `create` attribute when the compatibility tests ask for the username, password, and attributes required to create a single user.

The `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml` file also added a schema map.

Example 3: Finishing the Test Configuration

In this next example, you finish the test configuration.

Prepare the Test

Use the following steps to prepare the compatibility tests.

▼ To Prepare the Test

1 Set up the following files:

```
sample/compat/example.3/example.properties
```

```
sample/compat/example.3/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
```

Note – The default path to the simulated resource in `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig` is `/tmp/mySimulatedResource.xml`.

You can edit this path to specify a different location by changing two lines in the file.

2 Before executing the example, copy `ant-junit.jar` from Apache ant 1.6.5 to your `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib` directory.

3 You must initialize the repository to run the `encrypt` command.

For example, use the `lh import sample/init.xml` command to initialize the repository, where the original file looks like the following:

```
<Attribute name="login_infos">
  <List>
    <Object>
      <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
      <Attribute name="sim_password" value="ctPass" />
      <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="no" />
    </Object>
    <Object>
      <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
      <Attribute name="sim_password" value="wrongPass" />
      <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="yes" />
    </Object>
    <Object>
      <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
      <Attribute name="sim_password">
        <!-- result of 'encrypt ctPass' from lh console -->
        <EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-32DFBF32:1165DC91D73:
-7FFA|mDBIKsQB3xg=</EncryptedData>
      </Attribute>
```

```

        <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="no" />
    </Object>
    <Object>
        <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
        <Attribute name="sim_password">
            <!-- result of 'encrypt wrongPass' from lh console -->
            <EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-32DFBF32:1165DC91D73:
-7FFA|m0n9bAaMx+sKpqs5PmH3eQ==
        </EncryptedData>
        </Attribute>
        <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="yes" />
    </Object>
</List>
</Attribute>

```

4 In each case, use an encrypt command from the lh console to get an encrypted password that can be decrypted in your environment.

Run lh console and at the console prompt, type the text in single quotes for each of the preceding EncryptedData entries (for example, encrypt ctPass) and replace the text between <EncryptedData> and </EncryptedData> with the result.

See the following example:

```

<!-- result of 'encrypt ctPass' from lh console -->
<EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-65F64461:1163AB5A7B2:-7FFA|iMm4Tcqck+M=</EncryptedData>

<!-- result of 'encrypt wrongPass' from lh console -->
<EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-65F64461:1163AB5A7B2:-7FFA|d1/PheqRok+J3uaggtj9Gw==
</EncryptedData>

```

Alternatively, you can have the DataProvider skip the two login info entries by commenting out the whole block as follows:

```

<!-- commented out
    <Attribute name="login_infos">
        <List>
            <Object>
                <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
                <Attribute name="sim_password" value="ctPass" />
                <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="no" />
            </Object>
            <Object>
                <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
                <Attribute name="sim_password" value="wrongPass" />
                <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="yes" />
            </Object>
        </List>
    </Attribute>

```

```

        <EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-32DFBF32:1165DC91D73:-7FFA|mDBIkSQB3xg=
</EncryptedData>
    </Attribute>
    <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="no" />
</Object>
<Object>
    <Attribute name="sim_user" value="ctUser" />
    <Attribute name="sim_password">
        <EncryptedData>11D1DEF534EA1BE0:-32DFBF32:1165DC91D73:
-7FFA|m0n9bAaMx+sKpqs5PmH3eQ==
</EncryptedData>
    </Attribute>
    <Attribute name="shouldfail" value="yes" />
</Object>
</List>
</Attribute>
-->

```

- 5 Next, copy the new data and paste it inside the `<EncryptedData>` tag to replace the old data. Be certain there are no extra spaces or line breaks inside the tag.

Execute the Tests

Use the following steps to execute the compatibility tests.

▼ To Execute the Tests

- 1 Open a command window.

- 2 At the prompt, type

```
cd $WSHOME
```

```
bin/lh com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite -propsFile
sample/compat/example.3/example.properties
```

Your output should look similar to the following example:

```

TestSuite: com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite
Starting internal database server ...
DB Server @ jdbc:hsqldb:hsqldb://127.0.0.1:57022/idm
Importing file ./sample/compat/example.3/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
'Create(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Create)' passed (31 ms)
'Authenticate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.AuthenticateUser)' passed (12 ms)
'DeleteExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteExisting)' passed (1 ms)
'DeleteMissing(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteMissing)' passed (1 ms)
'UpdateExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.UpdateExisting)' passed (33 ms)
'RenameExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.RenameExisting)' passed (5 ms)
'EnableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.EnableExisting)' passed (10 ms)

```

'DisableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DisableExisting)' passed (5 ms)

'Iterate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Iterate)' passed (352 ms)

Tests run: 9, failures: 0, errors: 0, skipped: 0, Time elapsed: 10262 ms

What Happened

The line specifying the included tests was removed from the `example.properties` file, which should run the entire suite.

Additional data is required for the remaining tests, so the `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml` file was modified to include `update`, `rename`, and `iterate` attributes. These attributes modify users, rename users, and create a set of users over which to iterate. In addition, the file added an `login_info` attribute that specifies a list of items used to authenticate a user if authentication is supported by the resource adapter.

Finally, the `shouldfail` attribute, provided in the file under the `login_info` entries, allows negative tests. The tests in the suite should now complete with no errors or skipped tests.

Example 4: Executing Javascript or Beanshell Script

The compatibility tests enable you to execute a javascript or beanshell script and then import the script results into the repository. Either script must return a string that contains the XML to be imported.

Identity Manager provides an example Apache Velocity template and some supporting beanshell script that uses the template. The beanshell script was created just to fill in the required variables, which makes it very easy to work with the default `DataProvider`.

Prepare the Test

Prepare the compatibility test to execute with a beanshell script

▼ To Prepare the Test

1 Set up the following files:

`sample/compat/example.4/example.properties`

`sample/compat/example.4/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh`

Note – The default path to the simulated resource in `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig` is `/tmp/mySimulatedResource.xml`.

You can edit this path if you want to specify a different location.

You must change two lines in the file.

- 2 **Before executing the example, copy `ant-junit.jar` from Apache ant 1.6.5 to your `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib` directory.**

Execute the Tests

Execute the compatibility tests as follows:

▼ To Execute the Test

- 1 **Open a command window.**

- 2 **At the prompt, type**

```
cd $WSHOME
```

```
bin/lh com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite -propsFile
sample/compat/example.4/example.properties
```

Your output should look similar to the following example:

```
TestSuite: com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite
Starting internal database server ...
DB Server @ jdbc:hsqldb:hsq://127.0.0.1:57022/idm
Executing script /opt/build/dv207518/adapterTestsTemp/waveset/export/pipeline/./sample/
compat/example.4/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh
Importing results
'Create(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Create)' passed (25 ms)
'Authenticate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.AuthenticateUser)' passed (11 ms)
'DeleteExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteExisting)' passed (5 ms)
'DeleteMissing(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DeleteMissing)' passed (4 ms)
'UpdateExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.UpdateExisting)' passed (4 ms)
'RenameExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.RenameExisting)' passed (3 ms)
'EnableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.EnableExisting)' passed (11 ms)
'DisableExisting(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.DisableExisting)' passed (5 ms)
'Iterate(com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.Iterate)' passed (22 ms)
```

```
Tests run: 9, failures: 0, errors: 0, skipped: 0, Time elapsed: 11354 ms
```

What Happened

The DataProvider supplied an `importScript` property, which caused the `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh` script to run. This script returns an XML string that is imported into the repository as a configuration object. The script specified the necessary items, and the velocity template creates the string.

You can use one of the following methods to debug the `import` script:

- Use `lh console` to turn on tracing and then check the generated log files for the script's return value. For example, type:
`trace 4 com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CompatibilitySuite`
- Use the `excludedTests` property and exclude each test. No tests run, but the script executes.

Note – This example used `beanshell` scripting, but you can also use `Javascript`.

Several `beanshell` helpers are provided in the `sample/compat/beanshell` directory to make scripting easier by using the Apache Velocity template engine.

Note – Commented examples are included to help you use the `beanshell` helpers.

To use the templates, add the following code at the top of your `beanshell` script:

```
// import helpers
String wavesetHome = Util.getWavesetHome();

if(wavesetHome != null) {
    if ( wavesetHome.startsWith("file:" ) ) {
        wavesetHome = wavesetHome.substring("file:".length());
    }

    addClassPath(wavesetHome + "./sample/compat/");
}

importCommands("beanshell");
```

Using the helpers is optional.

When using a script, the only requirement is that the script must return a string containing XML. The script can access any of the parameters that were passed into the `CompatibilitySuite` using `_params`.

Where `_params` can contain any of the following properties.

Property	Description
adapter	Classname of the adapter to test
dp	Name of a custom DataProvider
importScript	Comma-separated list of paths to the scripts to execute Note: These scripts return a string of imported XML.
ns	DataProvider namespace
includedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to include
excludedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to exclude
import	Comma-separated list of files to import

Note – These properties are not provided in the `_params` map unless you set them in the properties file or used the `-D` command from the command line to add these properties to the `_params` map.

In beanshell, you can use a call to `params.get("parameter_name")` to retrieve these parameters.

If the beanshell script needs to know how the namespace parameter was set so that the script could form the name of the configuration object, the parameter would be retrieved as follows:

```
String namespace = _params.get("ns");
```

Example 5: Running Tests from Inside the Web Container

Use the following process to run compatibility tests from inside the web container.

Prepare the Test

Use the following steps to prepare the compatibility tests.

▼ To Prepare the Test

- 1 **Copy** `ant-junit.jar` **from Apache ant 1.6.5 to your** `$WSHOME/WEB-INF/lib` **directory.**
- 2 **Enable the** `com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.CTServlet` **by uncommenting the following in the** `web.xml` **file:**
 - Uncomment servlet definition:

```

<servlet>
  <servlet-name>CompatibilityTests</servlet-name>
  <servlet-class>com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.compatibility.CTServlet</servlet-class>
  <load-on-startup>1</load-on-startup>
</servlet>

```

- Uncomment servlet mapping:

```

<servlet-mapping>
  <servlet-name>CompatibilityTests</servlet-name>
  <url-pattern>/servlet/CTServlet</url-pattern>
</servlet-mapping>

```

Note –

- You might have to restart your computer to use the new servlet.
 - The servlet accepts POST requests with certain parameters. Some parameters, such as imported files, allow you to specify multiples.
-

3 You can specify the following parameters to the Compatibility Suite:

Property	Description
adapter	Classname of the adapter to test
dp	Name of a custom DataProvider
excludedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to exclude
import	Comma-separated list of files to import
importScript	Comma-separated list of paths to the scripts to execute Note: These scripts return a string of imported XML.
includedTests	Comma-separated list of tests to include
ns	DataProvider namespace
pass	Plain Text password used to log user on Note: This password is sent in plain text, which may influence your decision on whether or not to enable the servlet.
user	Name of user who executes test

Additional, remote-only parameters include:

Property	Description
importXMLText	String containing XML to import
importScriptText	String containing script to run
importScriptSuffix	Specify bsh if the script is a beanshell script Specify js if the script is javascript. Note: If you specify multiple scripts to the servlet, the scripts must all be javascript or all beanshell, you cannot specify one of each.

You can access the servlet through `debug/CompatTests.jsp` or the command line Java program, `CTContainerTest.java`.

- 4 To prepare for running the tests remotely, copy the file `idmtesting.jar` and the example folders under `sample/compat` to the remote system.**

Execute the Tests

Run the tests from the `CompatTests.jsp` page

▼ To Execute the Test

- 1 Open a browser and navigate to your *idm* instance/`debug/CompatTests.jsp`. For example, `http://example.com:8080/idm/debug/CompatTests.jsp`**
- 2 To run the example, you must provide the following values:**
 - Namespace = `SimulatedAdapterTests`
 - Adapter = `com.waveset.adapter.SimulatedResourceAdapter`
 - User Name to Run Test as = `configurator`
 - Password for User to Run Test as = *configurator's password*
 - Script type = Beanshell radio button
 - Import Result of this Script Text = *SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh file contents*
- 3 Copy the contents of the `SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh` file from the `sample/compat/example.4` directory and paste them into this text field.**

Note – This script runs Example 4, but you can run the other examples in the same way. The other parameters are available too, but the names are slightly altered in the `jsp` file.

You can also run the compatibility test remotely from a command line Java program called `CTContainerTest`. The usage is as follows:

```
CTContainerTest -url url [-v] [-parm1_name parm1_value e ... -parmx_name parmx_value]
```

Where:

- Parameter names are the same as parameters accepted by the servlet.
- Parameter values are the same as values accepted by the servlet.

The servlet does not support the following parameters as a command line argument:

- `importScriptText`

You can use the `importLocalScriptFile` parameter to send the `importScriptText` parameter to the servlet. The `importLocalScriptFile` option reads the contents of the file specified by the parameter value, and submits the content of that file to the servlet with the `importScriptText` parameter name.

- `importXMLText`

You can use the `importLocalXMLFile` parameter to send the `importXMLText` parameter to the servlet. The `importLocalXMLFile` option reads the contents of the file specified by the parameter value, and submits the content of that file to the servlet with the `importXMLText` parameter name.

For more information about the available parameters and their use, run the `CTContainerTest` program with no arguments, as follows:

```
java -cp idmtesting.jar com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CTContainerTest
```

The following examples illustrate different ways to run this command.

Note – To run these examples in a Windows environment, you must adjust the *hostname* and *port*, change the classpath separation character from a colon (:) to a semicolon (;), and change the path separator from a backward slash (/) to a forward slash (\).

Running a Compatibility Test Using the Default DataProvider

```
java -cp idmtesting.jar:idmcommon.jar com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CTContainerTest
-url "http://host:port/idm/servlet/CTServlet"
-adapter com.waveset.adapter.SimulatedResourceAdapter -ns SimulatedAdapterTests
-importLocalXMLFile ./example.1/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml -includedTests
DeleteMissing
```

Running a Compatibility Test with Added Tests

```
java -cp idmtesting.jar:idmcommon.jar com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CTContainerTest
-url "http://host:port/idm/servlet/CTServlet"
```

```
-adapter com.waveset.adapter.SimulatedResourceAdapter -ns SimulatedAdapterTests
-importLocalXMLFile ./example.2/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml -includedTests
DeleteMissing,EnableExisting,DisableExisting,DeleteExisting,Create
```

Running a Compatibility Test After Finishing the Test Configuration

```
java -cp idmtesting.jar:idmcommon.jar com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CTContainerTest
-url "http://host:port/idm/servlet/CTServlet"
-adapter com.waveset.adapter.SimulatedResourceAdapter -ns SimulatedAdapterTests
-importLocalXMLFile ./example.3/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.xml
```

Running a Compatibility Test After Executing Beanshell Script

```
java -cp idmtesting.jar:idmcommon.jar com.sun.idm.testing.adapter.CTContainerTest
-url "http://host:port/idm/servlet/CTServlet"
-adapter com.waveset.adapter.SimulatedResourceAdapter -ns SimulatedAdapterTests
-importLocalScriptFile ./example.4/SimulatedCompatibilityConfig.bsh
```

Testing the Resource Object

This section describes the following methods for testing the resource object:

- “Viewing and Editing a Resource Object” on page 209
- “Testing the Resource Object in Identity Manager” on page 210

Viewing and Editing a Resource Object

You can confirm the configuration of your resource by viewing the raw XML in the repository.

▼ To View and Edit a Resource Object

- 1 Log into the Administrator user interface.
- 2 Open the Identity Manager Debug pages by entering `http://host:port/idm/debug` in the browser.
- 3 Choose Resource from the pull-down menu located next to the List Objects button.
- 4 Click the List Objects button.

The List Objects of Type: Resource page displays with a list of all resource adapters and Active Sync-enabled adapters.

Note – All resource adapter and Active Sync-enabled adapter classes are based on existing Identity Manager Resource classes.

- 5 **Find the resource object you want to see.**
 - To view the resource object, click the View link.
 - To edit the resource object, click the Edit link.

- 6 **When you are finished, click Back.**

Testing the Resource Object in Identity Manager

You can use the Find Resources and List Resources pages in the Identity Manager Administrative interface to test your implementation of a resource object.

Select Resource > List Resource to confirm the following performance characteristics.

TABLE 9-32 List Resource Performance Characteristics

Expected Behavior in Interface	If This Does Not Occur
Identity Manager includes your resource type in the drop-down list of possible new resources.	Confirm that you have added it to the <code>resource.adapters</code> attribute in the <code>Waveset.properties</code> file.
When you open the resource folder, its contents reflect all the <code><ObjectType></code> elements that are defined in your resource adapter's <code><ObjectTypes></code> section.	Review the <code><ObjectType></code> elements in the adapter's <code>prototypeXML</code> .
When you right-click on one of your resource object types, all the supported features specified in your resource adapter's <code><ObjectFeatures></code> section per <code><ObjectType></code> is available from the menu.	Go to the Debug page and view or edit the resource in question to ensure that its list of <code><ObjectFeatures></code> for the <code><ObjectType></code> in question is correct.
You can create new resources and update existing resource objects.	Verify that your resource adapter code is in <code>WEB-INF/classes/com/waveset/adapter/sample</code>
The correct ResourceForms have been loaded for each type of operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Confirm that you have checked in all needed resource forms ■ Verify that the forms are correctly referenced (including the correct case) in the section for forms in the System configuration object.

Select Resource > Find Resources to confirm the following performance characteristics.

TABLE 9–33 Find Resources Performance Characteristics

Expected Behavior in the Interface	If not...
You can set all attributes you expect from the Resources > Find Resources page	Check all <ObjectType> elements and associated <ObjectAttribute> elements.
A find resource request returns the appropriate resource objects	Double-check the query arguments to ensure that the appropriate set of resource objects will match that query. If it still doesn't work, try the same query through another LDAP browser to ensure that it is not a problem with the query.
You can edit and/or delete objects returned from your find request.	Check to ensure that the <ObjectFeatures> section of the <ObjectType> in question includes the Update feature, which enables editing or the Delete feature, which enables deletion.

Troubleshooting Custom Adapters

You can use Identity Manager Debug pages to trace methods in your custom adapter. You must first enable tracing and identify the methods for which tracing is requested. You must also provide calls to create log entries for new methods in your custom adapter.

To debug your adapter, review the log file that is generated by the adapter. If you enabled tracing and identified the methods you wanted to trace, your adapter will write its resource settings to the log file. Use this information to validate that the adapter was started and that all setting changes were saved.

Note – See System Administrator's Guide for detailed information about tracing and debugging custom adapters.

Maintaining Custom Adapters

Any time you install a new Identity Manager patch or service pack you must test your custom resources with the new `idmcommon.jar` and `idmformui.jar` files. You might have to modify or enhance your adapters so they adapt to changes made in the new release. Alternatively, you might just need to rebuild or refresh your resource adapter in your installation.

When you upgrade to a new release, you might have to recompile all of your custom resource adapters, depending on the target Identity Manager version. All custom Java that uses Identity Manager APIs (including custom resource adapters) require a recompile during upgrading. Also, consider other Java classes that use the Identity Manager library.

For more information about upgrading, see Upgrade Guide.

Note – If your current Identity Manager installation has a large amount of custom work, contact your Sun Account Representative or Sun Customer Support for assistance with your upgrade.

Editing Configuration Objects

This chapter introduces an Identity Manager component called a *configuration object*. Configuration objects store persistent customizations to Identity Manager. They are cached object types, which means that all configuration objects are brought into memory, and the cache is subsequently flushed, whenever a configuration object is changed. Speaking broadly, with the large exception of User objects and TaskInstances, most objects in the Identity Manager repository are configuration objects.

Editing configuration object properties is one way of implementing persistent changes to Identity Manager behavior. This appendix describes how to view and edit configuration objects. The information is organized as follows:

- “Data Storage” on page 213
- “Viewing and Editing Configuration Objects” on page 215
- “Refreshing User Objects” on page 228

Data Storage

Sun Identity Manager repository stores configuration object data in the following tables:

Note – This is not a comprehensive list of tables; only relevant tables are listed here.

- **object**. Stores most of the Identity Manager application’s configuration objects, which include:
 - SystemConfiguration objects
 - TaskDefinition objects
 - WorkItem objects
 - Form objects
 - Resource objects
- **task**. Stores TaskInstances and WorkItems (in other words, the nonstatic instances of Workflows).

- **org.** Stores all Identity Manager organizational information.
- **userobj.** Stores all the Identity Manager enterprise identities. These identities are simply containers for accounts on managed systems.
- **account.** Stores the accounts identified on a managed system.

Note – This is the table being referenced when someone “builds the account index.” Each managed system has a set number of accounts in this table after reconciliation or account linking.

- **log.** Stores all audit events and log type information.

A key concept to understand in the Identity Manager repository is that all data is stored in two ways, where each table has indexed and keyed columns used to query objects and each table has an XML column used to store the entire ASCII representation of the object (depending on the database engine this is typically a BLOB or MEDIUM TEXT data type). Identity Manager stores data in this way because all Identity Manager objects are de-serialized from Java objects to ASCII XML for storage in the repository.

The application, at a high level, queries by the indexed columns, pulls back XML ASCII text and then serializes the XML into Java objects. These objects are usually made available through the use of views (such as User view and Password view).

Object Naming Conventions

Do not use the following characters in any Identity Manager object names:

Character	Description
'	single quotation mark
=	equal sign
.	period
	vertical bar
[left bracket
]	right bright
,	comma
:	colon

Character	Description
\$	dollar sign
\	backslash
"	double quotation mark

Avoid using other special characters in object names, such as the following, to prevent potential errors:

Character	Description
_	underscore
%	percent sign
*	asterisk
#	number sign
^	caret

Viewing and Editing Configuration Objects

Editing configuration object properties is one way of implementing persistent changes to Identity Manager behavior.

You can use the Sun Sun Identity Manager Integrated Development Environment (Identity Manager IDE) to view and edit Identity Manager objects for your deployment. Instructions for installing and configuring the Identity Manager IDE are now provided on <https://identitymanageride.dev.java.net>.

This section describes how to view and edit the following configuration objects:

- “IDM Schema Configuration Object” on page 216
- “UserUIConfig Object” on page 219
- “RepositoryConfiguration Object” on page 219
- “WorkItemTypes Configuration Object” on page 220
- “SystemConfiguration Object” on page 221
- “Role Configuration Object” on page 224
- “End User Tasks Object” on page 227

Note –

- An object's `authType` determines who can view or edit the configuration object. To assign an authorization type to an object, you set a new field defined in the `PersistentObject` class. From the Java API, you can access the authorization type using these methods:

```
public void setAuthType(String name);  
public String getAuthType();
```

In the XML for an object, you can set the `authType` attribute in the root element. For example:

```
<TaskDefinition name='Request More Space' authType='EndUserTask'  
    executor='com.waveset.workflow.WorkflowExecutor' ...>  
    ...  
</TaskDefinition>
```

- If you change the `inline` or `queryable` attributes for `Type.USER`, you must refresh all `User` objects.

For more information, see [“Refreshing User Objects” on page 228](#).

IDM Schema Configuration Object

You configure `User` and `Role` extended, `queryable`, and `summary` attributes in the `IDM Schema Configuration` configuration object.

Note – The schema customizations provided in the `IDM ObjectClass Configuration` object are loaded at server startup. Whenever you modify the schema, you must restart the server to load the changes.

Identity Manager records any problems loading the schema in the system log messages. Use one of the following methods to view these messages:

- Run the `lh syslog` command
- Run the 'Recent System Messages' report from the IDM Administrator Interface (Reports tab)

A sample of the schema can be found in the `schema.xml` file in the `sample` directory.

Edit the `IDM Schema Configuration` configuration object to add extended attributes to multiple object types during deployment. Specifically, you can

- Configure extended, queryable and summary attributes for Users, Roles, Business Roles, IT Roles, Application Roles, Asset Roles, and any custom roles
- Mark extended and built-in attributes as queryable or summary

Note – The IDM Schema Configuration object is protected with the `IDMSchemaConfig` `authType`.

Administrators needing to view or edit the Identity Manager schema for Users or Roles must have the `IDMSchemaConfig AdminGroup` (capability) assigned. The Configurator user has this `AdminGroup` assigned by default.

Adding an Extended Attribute to an Object

To add an extended attribute, you must define the attribute with an `IDMAttributeConfiguration` (unless the attribute is a built-in attribute).

`IDMAttributeConfigurations` require a name and syntax. The valid syntax options are `BOOLEAN`, `DATE`, `INT`, or `STRING`. Optionally, an `IDMAttributeConfiguration` can specify whether the attribute is multi-valued, and can provide a display name (currently not used), and a description.

To add an extended attribute, or mark an attribute (either extended or built-in) as queryable or summary, specify an `IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration` in the appropriate `IDMObjectClassConfiguration`, such as `User`. You must specify a name that matches an existing (built-in or configured in the same configuration object) `IDMAttributeConfiguration`. You can also mark the `IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration` as queryable or summary.

In the following example, `firstname`, `lastname`, and `fullname` are extended attributes. The `firstname` and `lastname` `User` attributes are queryable and summary, but `fullname` is not.

EXAMPLE 10-1 Extended Attributes Example

```
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8'?> <!DOCTYPE Waveset PUBLIC 'waveset.dtd' 'waveset.dtd'>
<Waveset>
<Configuration name="IDM Schema Configuration" id="#ID#Configuration:IDM_Schema_Configuration"
authType='IDMSchemaConfig'>
<IDMSchemaConfiguration>
<IDMAttributeConfigurations>
...
<IDMAttributeConfiguration name='firstname' description='User's first name' syntax='STRING'/>
<IDMAttributeConfiguration name='lastname' description='User's last name' syntax='STRING'/>
<IDMAttributeConfiguration name='fullname' description='User's full name' syntax='STRING'/>
...
</IDMAttributeConfigurations>
</IDMObjectClassConfigurations>
```

EXAMPLE 10-1 Extended Attributes Example (Continued)

```

...
<IDMObjectClassConfiguration name='User' extends='Principal'>
...
<IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration name='firstname' queryable='true' summary='true'/>
<IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration name='lastname' queryable='true' summary='true'/>
<IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration name='fullname'/>
...
</IDMObjectClassConfiguration>
</IDMObjectClassConfigurations>
</IDMSchemaConfiguration>
</Configuration>
</Waveset>

```

Note – *To prevent potential conflicts with new core attributes in future releases of Sun Identity Manager, prefix extended attributes with a deployment-specific prefix.*

For example, to add an extended attribute to User to record the employeeNumber, prefer a prefix associated with the company, such as acme_employeeNumber. If a future release of Identity Manager incorporates a built-in user attribute named employeeNumber, the two attributes will remain distinct. Otherwise the built-in attribute takes precedence.

Extending the Role Object Class

You can extend Role using an IDMObjectClassConfiguration. The following built-in Role extensions all extend the Role object class:

- BusinessRole
- ITRole
- AssetRole
- ApplicationRole

To add an extended attribute to a particular role extension, such as AssetRole, add the IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration to the AssetRole IDMObjectClassConfiguration. To add an extended attribute to all kinds of roles, add the IDMObjectClassAttributeConfiguration to the Role IDMObjectClassConfiguration, and it will be inherited by all extensions of Role.

You can define custom extensions of Role or any extension of Role. For example, to add a custom extension of AssetRole, define a new IDMObjectClassConfiguration (in the IDM Schema Configuration) for the new role, and use the extends field to specify the parent role, as shown in the following example:

```
<IDMObjectClassConfiguration name='MyAssetRole'
                             extends='AssetRole'
                             description='My Asset Role Description'/>
```

When you add a new Role objectclass, you must add a new Role type to the Role Configuration object. In addition, the new Role type's name must match the name of the new Role objectclass. For more information, see [“Role Configuration Object” on page 224](#).

UserUIConfig Object

Note – You now configure extended, queryable, and summary attributes for Users (WSUser) in the schema configuration instead of in the UserUIConfig object. For more information, see [“IDM Schema Configuration Object” on page 216](#)

The SummaryAttrRoleCountLimit attribute controls the number of roles that appear in the summary attribute string for a user. To control this number, specify a value here. If you do not specify a value in this object, Identity Manager will list at most three roles.

RepositoryConfiguration Object

The RepositoryConfiguration object contains settings that control the behavior of the Identity Manager Repository. Each XML attribute of the top-level <RepositoryConfiguration> element configures some aspect of overall Repository behavior.

For example, the following line specifies that repository locks expire in five minutes by default.

```
<RepositoryConfiguration ... lockTimeoutMillis='300000' ... >
```



Caution – *Do not* modify any RepositoryConfiguration setting unless you understand its effects.

The RepositoryConfiguration object also contains some settings that are specific to User objects. For example, the TypeDataStore element for User objects specifies the *inline attributes* for User objects.

Inline attributes are single-valued attributes that the Repository stores directly in the main object table for each type, in this case, in columns attr1 through attr5 of the USEROBJ table. Most attribute values are stored in the USERATTR table (which requires a separate join for each attribute). Inlining an attribute improves the performance of queries that use the attribute.

The sample RepositoryConfiguration object specifies default inline attributes for User objects, as follows:

```
<TypeDataStore typeName='User' ... attr1='MemberObjectGroups' \
  attr2='lastname' attr3='firstname' attr4="" attr5="" />
```

Do not change the value of `attr1`, which is set to `attr1='MemberObjectGroups'`. You can, however, specify the name of any attribute that is queryable and single-valued as the value of any of the remaining inline columns (`attr2` through `attr5`).

Note –

- If you change the inline attributes for `Type.USER`, you must refresh all `User` objects. For more information, see [“Refreshing User Objects” on page 228](#).
 - Changes to the `RepositoryConfiguration` object do not take effect until you restart each Identity Manager server. Restarting an Identity Manager server restarts the `Repository` on that server, which causes the `Repository` to re-read the `RepositoryConfiguration` object.
-

To view or edit the `RepositoryConfiguration` object, you must have `Debug` and `Security Administrator` capabilities.

For more information, see the “Upgrade Issues” section of the Release Notes, and the Identity Manager Tuning, Troubleshooting, and Error Messages guide.

WorkItemTypes Configuration Object

This configuration object is defined in `sample/workItemTypes.xml`, which is imported by `init.xml` and `update.xml`. This object enumerates the supported work item type names, extensions, and display names.

The `extends` attribute allows for a hierarchy of work item types (`workItemTypes`). When Identity Manager creates a work item, it delegates the work item to the specified users if its `workItem` type is:

- The type delegated
- One of the subordinate `workItem` types of the type being delegated

TABLE 10-1 `workItemTypes`

Type	extends	Display Name
<code>workItem</code>	<code>none</code>	All Work Items
<code>approval</code>	<code>workitem</code>	Approval
<code>organizationApproval</code>	<code>approval</code>	Organization Approval

TABLE 10-1 workItem Types (Continued)

Type	extends	Display Name
resourceApproval	approval	Resource Approval
roleApproval	approval	Role Approval
roleChangeApproval	approval	Role Change Approval
applicationRoleApproval	roleApproval	Application Approval
applicationRoleChangeApproval	roleChangeApproval	Application Change Approval
assetRoleApproval	roleApproval	Asset Approval
assetRoleChangeApproval	roleChangeApproval	Asset Change Approval
businessRoleApproval	roleApproval	Business Role Approval
businessRoleChangeApproval	roleChangeApproval	Business Role Change Approval
itRoleApproval	roleApproval	IT Role Approval
itRoleChangeApproval	roleChangeApproval	IT Role Change Approval
attestation	workItem	Access Review Attestation
accessReviewRemediation	workItem	Access
review	workItem	Remediation

SystemConfiguration Object

The `SystemConfiguration` object provides a central control point for many system behaviors and provides a means of storing persistent customizations to system behavior. Given its importance, and the frequency with which deployers customize it, the full range of possible customizations are not documented here. Some common customizations are documented here:

- [“Controlling the Display of the Password Confirmation Popup” on page 221](#)
- [“Configuring Delegate History List Length” on page 222](#)
- [“Enabling Attribute Value Customization” on page 222](#)
- [“Form and Workflow Save Behavior Customization” on page 222](#)
- [“Login-Related Customizations” on page 222](#)
- [“PasswordSync-Related Customizations” on page 223](#)
- [“Registering Scheduler Startup \(for Clustered Environments\)” on page 223](#)
- [“Source Adapter Task Customization” on page 224](#)

Controlling the Display of the Password Confirmation Popup

The `forgotPasswordChangeResults` attribute in the `SystemConfiguration` object controls whether Identity Manager displays a confirmation page after a user or administrator has initiated a password change by clicking the `Forgot My Password` button during log in.

- The default value of `forgotPasswordChangeResults.User` is `true`.
- The default value of `forgotPasswordChangeResults.Admin` is `false`.

Configuring Delegate History List Length

The `delegation.historyLength` attribute controls the size of the list of both current and completed delegations displayed by the End User View workItem Delegation form. This attribute specifies the maximum number of delegations that can appear in the delegation table. Note that the table will show all current delegations, no matter which value you set here.

The `SystemConfiguration` object contains the `security.delegation.historyLength` attribute, which controls the number of previous delegations that are recorded.

Enabling Attribute Value Customization

The `process.handleNativeChangeToAccountAttributes` attribute controls the auditing of attribute values. When set to `true`, attribute value enabling is enabled for both the reconciliation process and for the provisioner. By default, this property is not enabled.

Form and Workflow Save Behavior Customization

The `security.saveNoValidateAllowedFormsAndWorkflows` attribute lists the IDs of forms and workflows that will be processed as a `SaveNoValidate` action. All other forms and workflows will be processed as a `Save`. If this list is not present, the behavior remains the same for all forms and workflows (all forms and workflows will be processed as `SaveNoValidate`).

Login-Related Customizations

You can customize login behavior by directly editing system configuration object attributes.

Enabling autocomplete for Login Pages

By default, Identity Manager prevents browsers from offering to store the user's credentials. You can enable the `autocomplete` feature for the login pages by changing the `ui.web.disableAutocomplete` system configuration object to `true`. The login pages include `login.jsp`, `continueLogin.jsp`, `user/login.jsp`, and `user/continueLogin.jsp`.

Identity Manager login forms other than the preceding ones are generated from XPRESS, and you must edit these forms to use the new `display` property. These forms, which reside in the `sample` directory, include this property commented out by default.

- Anonymous User Login
- Question Login Form
- End User Anonymous Enrollment Validation Form
- End User Anonymous Enrollment Completion Form
- Lookup Userid

Displaying an Error Message During an Attempt to Provision a Disabled User

The `ProvisioningDisabledUserShouldThrow` attribute controls whether Identity Manager will produce an error message when preventing an attempt to provision a disabled user. When set to true, Identity Manager will prevent any attempt to provision a disabled user to a resource and will produce an error. When this attribute is not set to true, then Identity Manager will still prevent the provisioning, but will not produce an error.

Launching the Password Login Workflow upon Login

The `runPasswordLoginOnSuccess` attribute controls whether Identity Manager will run the Password Login workflow when a user successfully logs in. When set to true, Identity Manager will run this workflow after successful login. By default, the value of this attribute is false.

PasswordSync-Related Customizations

You can customize PasswordSync behavior by directly editing the following system configuration object attributes:

- `PasswordSyncResourceExcludeList` – This attribute controls whether lists of resource names should always be excluded from synchronization.
- `PasswordSyncThreshold` – If PasswordSync is enabled for a resource for which Identity Manager can also initiate password changes, you can use this setting to prevent a loop-back password change. When you initiate a password change from Identity Manager, it will set the password on the resource, and the PasswordSync library will notify Identity Manager of the change. Identity Manager will then compare the `lastPasswordDate` on the user object to the current time. If this difference is less than the `PasswordSyncThreshold`, Identity Manager will ignore the password change.

Registering Scheduler Startup (for Clustered Environments)

The `scheduler.hosts` attribute registers startup behavior for the scheduler for each Identity Manager application instance.

The value of `scheduler.hosts` is a map that contains an entry for each host that you want to control. The key is the `hostname` for the Identity Manager application instance.

Note – To see the `hostname` value, go to the `debug/GetStatus.jsp` page in your Identity Manager installation.

The following values are valid:

- `enabled` (default)
- `disabled`
- `manual` (suspended)

The default value is used if no value or an invalid value is specified.

Note – The `task.scheduler.enabled` and `task.scheduler.suspended` properties in the `Waveset.properties` file override the value set in the System Configuration object.

Following is an example of the scheduler attribute from `Configuration:System Configuration`:

```
<Attribute name='scheduler'>
  <Object>
    <Attribute name='hosts'>
      <Map>
        <MapEntry key='goliad' value='enabled' />
        <MapEntry key='sanjacinto' value='manual' />
        <MapEntry key='washington' value='disabled' />
      </Map>
    </Attribute>
  </Object>
</Attribute>
```

Source Adapter Task Customization

You can edit the following two attributes to customize the behavior of the source adapter task:

- `sources.subject` – Specifies the login name of the administrator designated as the owner of the source adapter task.
- `sources.hosts` – Specifies the server on which the source adapter task runs.

Role Configuration Object

The `Role Configuration` object defines the supported Role Types, Actions, and List Columns. The following sections describe the supported elements of a Role Type definition:

- [“Types Attribute” on page 224](#)
- [“Actions Attribute” on page 226](#)
- [“List Columns Attribute” on page 227](#)
- [“Other Options” on page 227](#)

Types Attribute

Role type attributes are configured in the `types` section of the `Role Configuration` object. For each type of role in the list, for example business or IT roles, you must specify the following attributes:

- [“displayName Attribute” on page 225](#)

- “authType Attribute” on page 225
- “workItemTypes Attribute” on page 225
- “features Attribute” on page 225

displayName Attribute

Specifies the type’s display name whose value is a message catalog key.

authType Attribute

Specifies the authorization type associated with the role type. An authorization type enables fine-grain authorization for who is allowed to view and manage this role type. If you have not yet defined an authType, add one to the AuthorizationTypes configuration object. You must reference that authType within an AdminGroup (capability) as a type within a Permission that grants access to roles of this authType.

Note – All roles have an authorization type. If you load a role without an authorization type, the authorization type defaults to ITRole.

workItemTypes Attribute

The type of work items that can be created for role assignment approval and role change approval. If you have not yet defined the specified workItem types, add them to the WorkItemTypes configuration object.

features Attribute

The features attribute includes the following features:

- changeApproval. If specified, indicates that Owners specified in the Role must approve any changes to a Role of this type. If no Owners are specified, then no approvals occur.
- changeNotification. If specified, indicates that any changes to a Role of this type will send email notifications to the owners of the specified Role.
- containedTypes. Required feature whose value is the list of Role types that can be contained in this type, where the allowed values are:
 - BusinessRole
 - ITRole
 - ApplicationRole
 - AssetRole
 - Custom role types
- assignResources. If specified, indicates that resources and resource groups can be assigned to roles of this type. If not specified, defaults to no Resources can be assigned to Roles of this type.

- `userAssignment`. If specified, indicates whether Roles of this type can be directly assigned to Users. If this Role type can be assigned directly to Users, this feature also specifies whether the Users can be assigned manually and automatically. If not specified, defaults to user assignment not allowed.

Note – Automatic assignment is not supported in this release, but will be in a future release.

- `manual`. If specified (for example `true` or `false`), indicates whether you can manually assign Roles of this type to Users.
 - `activateDate`. If specified (for example `true` or `false`), indicates whether you can specify a future activation (start) date for Roles of this type when assigned to a User. Note that this feature is valid only if `userAssignment.manual` is `true`.
 - `deactivateDate`. If specified (for example `true` or `false`), indicates whether you can specify a future deactivation (end) date for Roles of this type when assigned to a User. Note that this feature is valid only if `userAssignment.manual` is `true`.

Note – You can set both `activateDate` and `deactivateDate` to `true`, even if `userAssignment.manual` is not. If you set both attributes to `true` for a roleType, and if the role is contained by another role optionally, then you can specify activate and deactivate dates when assigning the optional role to a user.

- `roleExclusions`. If specified, indicates that Roles of this type allow the Role editor to specify a list of Roles that cannot be assigned to a user if this Role is assigned; an exclusion list.

Actions Attribute

The Actions attribute defines a set of actions that a Role administrator can take on one or more Roles in the list Roles table and when adding role exclusions to contained roles to an existing role.

Three sets of actions are specified in role configuration:

- `actions`. Actions displayed in the main role list and on the Find Role Results pages.
- `addContainedRoleActions`. Actions displayed as an administrator is adding contained roles to a role.
- `addRoleExclusionsActions`. Actions displayed as an administrator is adding a role exclusion to a role.

Each action is defined with the following attributes:

- `action`. Specifies the command.
- `label`. Specifies the display name message key.

- `requiredPermissions`. Permissions that control whether the action is displayed, depending on the administrator's permissions.
 - `Type`. Type of object to which an administrator must have the given rights.
 - `Rights`. List of rights that an administrator must have for the given object type
- `selectionRequired`. Indicates that a role must be selected for this action.
- `type`. Specifies the role action type, which can be `create`, `update`, `delete`, or `task`.
- `view`. Copies the contents of this attribute onto the role view during the execution of the action for `create`, `update`, and `delete` role action types.
- `task`. Specifies the task to launch for task action types.
- `skipTaskLaunchForm`. If set to `true`, skips the task launch form. Otherwise the task launch form (if present) is displayed. Applies to task action types.

List Columns Attribute

The List Columns attribute defines the set of attribute names and labels to display as column headings when viewing lists of Roles (for example, List roles and find role results).

You can specify unique sets of attributes to display as list column headings. The attributes for each defined column are

- `name`. Name of the role attribute to display
- `displayName`. Display name to appear in the column header
- `rule`. Optional rule that might format the attribute value. The `rule` is invoked for each row in the list, and the value returned by the rule is what displays in each table cell.

Other Options

You can also set the following options in the Role Configuration object:

- `roleListMaxRows`. The maximum number of roles to list
- `roleListPageSize`. The number of roles to display on a single page

End User Tasks Object

The End User Tasks object defines the tasks that you can run from the Identity Manager user interface. You can assign the `EndUserTask` authorization type to any `TaskDefinition` object, and you can assign the `EndUserRule` authorization type to any `Rule` objects that must be exposed.

Refreshing User Objects

Certain types of changes require an administrator to refresh all User objects. For example, you must refresh all User objects when you change the inline attributes for `Type.USER` in `RepositoryConfiguration`. Whenever you mark an attribute as queryable or summary in the `IDMSchemaConfiguration` object, you must refresh all User objects for the change to affect older, unmodified objects. The same logic applies when a new version of Identity Manager adds a new attribute, or when a new version of Identity Manager changes the values of an existing attribute. The upgrade process or an administrator must refresh all User objects for the change to affect older, unmodified objects.

There are three ways to re-serialize existing users:

- Modify an individual User object during normal operations.

For example, opening a user account through the user interface and saving it with or without modifications.

Disadvantage: This method is time-consuming, and the administrator must be meticulous to ensure all existing users are re-serialized.

- Use the `lh refreshType` utility to re-serialize all users. The `refreshType` utility's output is a refreshed list of users.

```
lh console
refreshType User
```

Disadvantage: Because the `refreshType` utility runs in the foreground and not the background, this process can be time-consuming. If you have a lot of users, re-serializing them all takes a long time.

- Use the Deferred Task Scanner.

Note – Before running the Deferred Task Scanner process, you must edit the `System Configuration` object using the Identity Manager IDE or some other method.

Search for `'refreshOfType'` and remove the attributes for `'2005Q4M3refreshOfTypeUserIsComplete'` and `'2005Q4M3refreshOfTypeUserUpperBound'`.

After editing the `System Configuration` object, you must import that object to repository for your changes to be present.

Disadvantage: This method causes the next Deferred Task Scanner run to take a long time because it examines and rewrites almost every User object. However, subsequent Deferred Task Scanner runs should execute at normal speed and duration.

Enabling Internationalization

This chapter describes how to configure Identity Manager to use multiple languages or to display a language other than English.

Architectural Overview

TABLE 11-1 Components of Identity Manager Internationalization

File	Description
WPMessages.properties	Default message file located in \$WSHOME/idm/web/WEB-INF/classes/com/waveset/msgcat. Shipped as part of the idmcommon.jar file. Displays message text in English and loads by default unless you've customized your Identity Manager installation to behave otherwise.
Waveset.properties	Located in \$WSHOME/config. To enable support for multiple languages, you must set Internationalization.enabled to true. (Default is true.)
System Configuration Object	Specify a custom message catalog
Additional message file for each supported language	Additional supported languages each require their own message file. WPMessages_xx_XX.properties, where xx represents the language and XX represents the country. For example, WPMessages_en_US.properties contains messages in American English. Each international catalog has its own .jar.

Note –

- If you loaded a new catalog in /config that uses the same name as the default catalog, the new catalog takes precedence over the default.
- If you have more than one message file, you can specify the catalog from which a message key is derived by specifying catalogname:keyname.

The following catalog entries control how the product name is displayed:

```
PRODUCT_NAME=Identity Manager
LIGHTHOUSE_DISPLAY_NAME=[PRODUCT_NAME]
LIGHTHOUSE_TYPE_DISPLAY_NAME=[PRODUCT_NAME]
LIGHTHOUSE_DEFAULT_POLICY=Default [PRODUCT_NAME] Account Policy
```

Typical Entry

Messages are contained in key/text pairs and contain three parts:

- A text string, or key, that is an identifier used by the code to retrieve data. Do not translate this required component. This component is used in the product configuration, and acts as a placeholder for the translation.
- An equals (“=”) sign separating the key and text. This entry is required.
- A string containing data that is displayed when running the application. This entry is the translation, used in place of the key whenever the page is rendered in the browser.

Each line in the resource array contains two strings. Translate the second quoted string on each line.

Certain strings to be translated contain special codes for data that is inserted into the string when it is displayed. For example, if you have the following string to translate:

```
UI_USER_CONNECT={0}, connected at 100 mbs
```

the rendered version could appear as jfaux, connected at 100 mb

Translations typically appear inside a browser, so it is appropriate to add HTML tags to format the string, as shown below:

```
_FM_ACCOUNT_ID_HELP=<b>Account ID</b><br>Enter a name for this user. This field is required.
```

Enabling Support for Multiple Languages

Use the instructions described in this section to enable multiple language support for Identity Manager.

Step One: Download and Install Localized Files

Perform the following tasks”

- “Before You Install” on page 231
- “Download Message Catalog Files” on page 231
- “Install Localized Files” on page 232

Before You Install

Perform the following tasks before you install localized files:

1. Install Identity Manager. See Installation Guide for detailed installation procedures.
2. Make sure the following locales on the application server have been set to UTF-8
 - Application server instance
 - Database
 - Java Virtual Machine (JVM)

Refer to the documentation for these products for information about setting the locale.

Download Message Catalog Files

The Identity Manager software download website provides the following localized message catalogs. Download the appropriate message catalog jar file and place that file in the WEB-INF/lib directory.

TABLE 11-2 Message Catalog Files

File Name (.zip)	Language	Locale
IDM__8_1_110n_de	German	de_DE
IDM__8_1_110n_es	Spanish	es_ES
IDM__8_1_110n_fr	French (France and Canada)	fr_FR
IDM__8_1_110n_it	Italian	it_IT
IDM__8_1_110n_ja	Japanese	ja_JP
IDM__8_1_110n_ko	Korean	ko_KR

TABLE 11-2 Message Catalog Files (Continued)

File Name (.zip)	Language	Locale
IDM__8_1_110n_pt	Brazilian Portuguese	pt_BR
IDM__8_1_110n_zh	Simplified Chinese	zh_CN
IDM__8_1_110n_zh_TW	Traditional Chinese	zh_TW

Download the ZIP file to a temporary location. By default, the contents of the ZIP file are extracted to the `FileName\IDM_8_0_110n` directory, where `FileName` matches the name of the downloaded file, minus the ZIP extension.

Zip File Contents

Every extracted ZIP file contains the following:

- A JAR file containing localized message catalogs, help files, and other essential files. The JAR file is named `IDM_5_0_110n_Locale.jar`.
- Identity Manager Localization README

Additional translated publications might also be available.

Install Localized Files

Copy the JAR file from the temporary location to the `IdentityManagerInstallation/WEB-INF/lib` directory.

Step Two: Edit the `Waveset.properties` File

To edit the `Waveset.properties` file,

▼ To Edit the File

- 1 **Open the** `IdentityManagerInstallation/config/Waveset.properties` **file with your editor of choice.**
- 2 **Change the** `Internationalization.enabled` **property to** `true`.
- 3 **Save your changes and close the file.**
- 4 **Either restart Identity Manager or click Reload Properties on the Debug pages available at the following location:**

`http://host:port/idm/debug.url`

Maintaining ASCII Account IDs and Email Addresses During Anonymous Enrollment Processing

By default, Identity Manager's anonymous enrollment processing generates values for `accountId` and `emailAddress` by using user-supplied first (`firstName`) and last names (`lastName`) as well as `employeeId`. Because anonymous enrollment processing can result in the inclusion of non-ASCII characters in email addresses and account IDs, international users must modify `EndUserRuleLibrary` rules so that Identity Manager maintains ASCII account IDs and email addresses during anonymous enrollment processing.

To maintain account ID and email address values in ASCII during anonymous enrollment processing, follow these two steps:

▼ To Maintain Account ID and Email Address Values

- 1 Edit the following rules in the `EndUserRuleLibrary` as indicated in the following table:

Edit this rule	To make this change...
<code>getAccountId</code>	To use <code>employeeId</code> only (and remove <code>firstName</code> and <code>lastName</code>)
<code>getEmailAddress</code>	To use <code>employeeId</code> only (remove <code>firstName</code> , <code>lastName</code> , and ".")
<code>verifyFirstname</code>	To change length check from 2 to 1 to allow for single character Asian first names

- 2 Edit `EndUserAnonEnrollmentCompletionForm` to remove the `firstName` and `lastName` arguments from calls to the `getAccountId` and `getEmailAddress` rules.

Index

Numbers and Symbols

@todo, 169

A

account attributes

defining, 147, 152-153

description, 152-153

mapping resource attributes, 169

standard Identity Manager, 152-153, 153

using Correlation rule, 143

using process rule, 144

using Resolve Process rule, 144

account DN, 155

account ID policies, 68-69

account index, 33

bulk actions and, 67, 68

linking accounts with, 75

load from file and, 66

load from resource and, 66

reconciliation and, 68

account name syntax, 155

account reconciliation, 36-38

AccountAttribute, 147

AccountAttributesTypes, 170

accountID, 143, 159

accountId, 147, 153

accounts

disabling, 178

enabling, 174, 178

Active Directory, 62, 76, 77-78

Active Directory (*Continued*)

Users and Computers MMC, 65

Active Sync-enabled adapters

event-driven, 162

identifying Identity Manager user, 142

initializing, 180

methods, writing, 180-182

overview, 139

polling, 162, 180-181

storing and retrieving attributes, 181-182

updating the Identity Manager repository, 182

Active Sync

IAPIProcess, 49, 144

IAPIUser, 49, 144

interface, 140

loading account data, 64

overview, 146

resource attributes, 150

ActiveSyncUtil class, 180

adapters

account disabling example, 55-59

Active Sync-enabled.

See Active Sync-enabled adapters

build environment, 165-166

configuring, 68

creating custom, 137, 167

debugging, 191-211

defining features, 173-178

defining resource forms, 189-190

experience requirements, 138

form processing, 52-59

important notes, 138

adapters (*Continued*)

- initializing, 180
- installing custom, 190-191
- maintaining custom, 211-212
- methods.
 - See* methods, adapter
- overview, 139-146
- recommended reading, 138
- registering, 141
- sample files for creating, 161, 164-165
- scheduling, 180-181
- setting options and attributes, 169-170
- standard, 139
- testing custom, 191-211
- writing methods, 171-182

AdminGroups, 28-29

AIXResourceAdapter.java file, 164

APIs, Identity Manager, 211

APIs, registering adapters, 141

Attribute Condition Operators, 21-22

attribute conditions, 21

AttributeDefinitionRef, 169, 170

attributes

account.

See account attributes

custom, 169

description, 15

extended, 17

extended schema, 162

extends, 28

Identity Manager, 145

Identity System, 19

inline, 16

managing, 188

mapping syntax, 169

operational, 18

other, standard, 20

queryable, 16

resource.

See resource attributes

Resource User, 19

secret, 23

summary, 16

types, 16

attributes (*Continued*)

user, 145

user view, 65, 70

view, 19

authenticate() method, 179

authentication

pass-through.

See pass-through authentication

AuthnProperty, 158

authorization types

architectural features, 27

creating, 29

description, 25

using, 26

AuthType elements, 27

B

build environment for adapters, 165-166

built-in attributes, 18

exposing, 18

marking as queryable or summary, 217

precedence, 17

bulk action, creating, 67-68, 86

bulk operations, 40

C

calling

methods, 171, 172, 181

capabilities

adding to roles, 107

assigning, 29, 30

Debug, 220

defining, 28-29, 145

discovery and reconciliation, 38

EndUser, 29

granting, 107

Security Administrator, 220

classes

ActiveSyncUtil, 180

editing public, 146

IAPI, 182

- classes (*Continued*)
 - Java, 172
 - object, 184
 - recompiling, 211
 - resource adapter, 145
 - ResourceAdapterBase, 139, 174
 - comma-separated values file., *See* CSV file
 - configuration, login, 147
 - Configuration, AuthorizationTypes object, 27
 - configuring an adapter, 68
 - confirmation rule, 142
 - confirmation rules
 - custom, 74
 - linking accounts with, 71
 - load from file and, 65
 - load from resource and, 66
 - connecting with resource, 172
 - connection information, 145
 - connection settings, checking, 172-173
 - correlation keys, custom, 72-74
 - correlation rule, 143
 - correlation rules
 - custom, 74
 - linking accounts with, 71
 - load from file and, 65
 - load from resource and, 66
 - create bulk action, 67-68, 86
 - create requests, 185
 - Create Unmatched Accounts, 143
 - CSV file, 65, 67, 86
 - custom adapter
 - installing, 190-191
 - maintaining, 211-212
 - recompiling, 211
 - testing, 191-211
 - custom attributes, 169
 - custom correlaton keys, 72-74
 - custom rules, 74
 - customizations file, 117
 - customizing
 - Data Exporter, 99-103
 - headers and footers, 117-118
 - Identity Manager pages, 118
 - logo, 124
 - customStyle.css, 116, 117
- D**
- Data Exporter
 - architecture, 91-92
 - connection pooling, 93
 - customizing, 99-103
 - data types, 90-91
 - database requirements, 93-95
 - export schema, 100-101
 - export server, 95
 - factory classes, 102-103
 - Hibernate support, 93
 - logging, 104
 - ObjectClass schema, 99-100
 - overview, 89-90
 - planning for, 93-95
 - space requirements, 95
 - task, 95
 - tracing, 104
 - troubleshooting, 103-104
 - Warehouse Interface Code, 101-102
 - data loading
 - account, creating, 70
 - preparing for, 68-71
 - processes, 64-68
 - types, 38-39
 - data types, 90-91
 - data types, supported, 90
 - database accounts adapter files, 164
 - database tables adapter files, 164
 - DB2 DDL, 96
 - Debug pages, Identity Manager, 211
 - debugging custom adapters, 191-211
 - default style settings, 117
 - default text, 116
 - delegation.historyLength attribute, 222
 - delete rule, 143
 - deletion requests, 143
 - distinguished name, setting, 170
 - documentation, related, 138

E

- email account attributes, 153
- enabling
 - accounts, 174
 - Pass-Through Authentication, 179
- EndUser Capability, 29
- environment, assessing, 61
- example labeling exercises, 123-131
- examples
 - login configuration, 159
 - object resource attribute declarations, 159
 - object type definitions, 186
- ExampleTableResourceAdapter.java file, 164
- experience requirements, for developing custom adapters, 138
- export attribute parameters, 100-101
- export schema, 100-101
- export task, 95
- extended attributes, 216
 - adding to ObjectClass schema, 102
 - description, 17
 - marking as queryable or summary, 217
 - where supported, 18
- extended schema attributes, 162, 169, 170
- Extended User Attributes Configuration object, 73
- extending Role objectClass, 218-219
- extends attributes, 28

F

- features
 - account, 174-175
 - general, 174
 - getFeatures() method, 173
 - group, 175
 - organizational unit, 175
- file-based accounts adapter files, 164
- find requests, 211
- font characteristics, changing, 122-123
- footer
 - changing bar colors, 124-125
 - customizing, 117-118
- forensic queries, 92

- forgotPasswordChangeResults attribute
 - attribute, 221
- form objects, designating, 147
- forms
 - assigning, 189-190
 - referencing, 210

G

- getFeatures() methods, 173, 179

H

- header information, adapter source code, 146
- header
 - changing bar colors, 124-125
 - customizing, 117-118
- Hibernate support, 93

I

- IAPI classes, 182
- IAPI objects, 141, 142, 182
- IAPIFactory.getIAPI methods, 141, 182
- IAPIProcess, 49, 144, 182
- IAPIUser, 49, 144, 182
- Identity Application Programming Interface (IAPI), 141
- Identity Manager Debug pages, 211
- Identity Manager
 - account attributes.
 - See account attributes
 - attributes, 145
 - logo, replacing, 124
 - password policies, 68-69
 - repository, 182
 - standard account attributes, 153
 - user, identifying, 142
- Identity System attributes, description, 19
- identity template, 147, 154-155, 158
- IDM Schema Configuration configuration object, 216
- important notes, for developing custom adapters, 138

init() method, 180
 initializing an adapter, 180
 inline attributes, description, 16
 installing
 custom adapters, 190-191
 REF Kit, 165

J

Java classes, recompiling, 211
 JAVA_HOME, 165, 166
 Java
 classes, 172
 defining resource attributes, 148
 JavaDocs, 163, 164
 Java
 header information, 146
 resource adapters, 139, 164
 JSP files, 117

L

labeling exercises, sample, 123-131
 language support, enabling, 231-232
 language support, maintaining ASCII account IDs and
 email addresses during anonymous user
 enrollment, 233
 LDAP, 62, 80, 83-84
 LDAP-based resource objects, 184
 linking accounts
 manually, 74-76
 overview, 71
 using account index, 75
 using self-discovery, 75-76
 list method, 177
 load from file, 39
 Load from File, 64, 65-66
 load from resource, 39
 Load from Resource, 64, 66-67
 load operations, 39
 loading data, example scenarios, 76-87
 login configuration, 147, 156, 158-159, 159
 LoginConfigEntry, 147, 158, 159, 179

logo, customizing, 124

M

managing
 attributes, 188
 groups and organizations, 157
 resources, 139, 141, 145, 148
 map, schema., *See* schema map
 mapping, resource attributes, 169
 MBeans, 95
 message catalog files, 231-232
 messages, internationalizing, 230
 methods, adapter
 Active Sync-specific, 180-182
 checking connections and operations, 172-173
 connecting with resource, 172
 creating an account on a resource, 176
 creating the prototype resource, 172
 defining features, 173-178
 deleting accounts on a resource, 176
 enabling and disabling accounts, 178
 enabling pass-through authentication, 179
 getting user information, 177
 initializing and scheduling the adapter, 180
 list methods, 177
 overview, 156-157
 polling the resource, 180-181
 standard resource adapter-specific, 171-180
 storing and retrieving adapter attributes, 181-182
 updating accounts on the resource, 176-177
 updating the Identity Manager repository, 182
 writing, overview, 171-182
 methods
 calling, 171, 172, 181
 getFeatures(), 173
 IAPIFactory.getIAPI, 141, 182
 startConnection, 172
 stopConnection, 172
 MMC, 65
 MySQL DDL, 96
 MySQLResourceAdapter.java file, 164

N

native disable utilities, 178

O

object attributes, 188-189

object classes, 184-185

object features, 187-188

object types, 185-186

ObjectAttributes, 188

ObjectClass schema, 99-100

 adding custom attributes, 102

 description, 99

 extending for User and Role types, 99

ObjectClasses, 184

ObjectFeatures, 187

objects

 Configuration

 AuthorizationTypes, 27

 resource.

See resource objects

ObjectTypes, 186

operational attributes, description, 18

Oracle DDL, 97

other, standard attributes, description, 20

P

page title and subtitle, changing, 119-120

pass-through authentication, 156, 158-159, 179

password attributes, 153

password policies, 68-69

PeopleSoft, 62, 80, 82

permissions

 subType, 28

 superType, 28

poll() method, 180

polling a resource, 180-181

polling scenarios, 181

Populate Global, 143

process rule, 144

properties

 authentication, 158

properties (*Continued*)

 Waveset.properties, 165

prototype resource, creating, 172

prototypeXML

 description/purpose, 146

 resource type, 148

 standard resource adapter issues, 157-160

Q

queryable attributes, 216

 description, 16

quick links, adding to login page, 119

R

README files, 165

recommended reading, related to adapters, 138

recompiling custom resource adapters, 211

reconcile configuration object, 47

reconciliation, 36-38

reconciliation process, 40

reconciliation

 auditing native changes, 45-46

 confirmation rules, 41-43

 correlation rules, 41-43

 daemon task, 46

 overview, 64, 68

 policy settings, 40-46

 resource schedules, 46-47

 workflows, 44-45

reconRules.xml, 74

REF Kit

 files/directories, 164

 installing, 165

 location, 164

 sample adapter files, 164

 sample files, 164-165

referencing, forms, 210

related documentation, 138

RelationalDataStore, 22

Remedy, 80, 85

repository, updating, 182

- requests
 - create, 185
 - deletion, 143
 - find, 211
 - update, 185
 - requirements, experience, for developing custom adapters, 138
 - resolve process rule, 144
 - resource adapter classes, 145
 - resource attributes
 - defining, 148
 - mapping account attributes, 169-170
 - mapping extended schema attributes, 170
 - mapping to account attributes, 169
 - Resource Extension Facility kit., *See* REF Kit
 - resource objects
 - defining capabilities, 145
 - description/purpose, 145
 - resource timeout settings, 47
 - Resource User attributes, description, 19
 - ResourceAdapterBase class, 139, 174
 - resource
 - adapters.
 - See* adapters
 - ResourceAttribute, 147, 148
 - resource
 - attributes
 - Active Sync-specific, 150
 - defining, 148
 - mapping to account attributes, 169-170
 - overview, 147, 148
 - choosing initial to load, 62-64
 - connecting with, 172
 - creating account on, 176
 - forms, 189-190
 - instance, creating, 172
 - methods.
 - See* methods, adapter
 - objects, 145
 - attributes, 188-189
 - classes, 184-185
 - features, 187-188
 - LDAP-based, 184
 - non-LDAP-based, 185
 - resource, objects (*Continued*)
 - testing in Identity Manager, 210-211
 - types, 185-186
 - viewing, 209-210
 - resources, managing, 139, 141, 145, 148
 - resource
 - schema map.
 - See* schema map
 - XML definition, 146
 - Role types, ObjectClass schema, 99
 - Role
 - defining custom extensions, 218
 - extending the objectClass, 218-219
 - Roles
 - adding new capabilities, 107
 - configuring attributes, 216
 - roles
 - controlling the number of, 219
 - description, 90
 - Roles
 - editing schema for, 18, 217
 - extended attributes, 18
 - roles
 - viewing, 29
 - rules
 - Correlation, 143
 - custom, 74
 - process, 144
- ## S
- SAP, 62
 - scenarios, polling, 181
 - scheduler.hosts attribute, 223
 - scheduling an adapter, 180-181
 - scheduling parameters, 181
 - schema, editing, 18, 217
 - schema map, 154, 169-170
 - schemas
 - export, 100-101
 - ObjectClass, 99-100
 - secret attributes, 23
 - SecurID, 76, 78-79
 - self-discovery, 75-76

- servers, connection settings, 145
- skeleton files, adapter
 - editing, 168-169
 - login configuration, 159
 - overview, 167, 168
- Solaris, 76, 79-80
- source code for adapters, 146
- special considerations, for developing custom adapters, 138
- SQL Server DDL, 97
- standard adapters, 139
 - See adapters
- startConnection methods, 172
- stopConnection methods, 172
- style.css, 116
- style settings, default, 117
- style sheets, modifying, 116
- summary attributes, 216
- Sun Resource Extension Facility Kit., *See REF Kit.*
- SupportedApplications, 158, 159
- supported, data types, 90
- syntax
 - account name, 155
 - mapping attributes, 169
 - view path, 40
- system configuration object, internationalizing, 229
- SystemConfiguration object, 221

T

- Template, 147
- testing
 - custom adapters, 191-211
 - resource object in Identity Manager, 210-211
- text, default, 116
- text attributes, 117

U

- UNIX accounts adapter files, 164
- update requests, 185
- updating accounts on a resource, 176-177

- user attributes
 - defined by resource objects, 145
 - retrieving, 177
- user forms, 70-71
- user identity template.
 - See identity template
- User Name Matches AccountId, 65, 66
- user names, 155
- user view, 70
 - attributes, 65
- Users
 - editing schema for, 18, 217
- utilities, native disable, 178

V

- view attributes, 70
 - description, 19
- view path syntax, 40
- viewing objects, 29

W

- Warehouse Interface Code, 101-102
 - generating classes, 102-103
- waveset.accountId, 70
- waveset.organization, 70
- Waveset.properties, 165
- Waveset.properties file, 229, 232
- WIC source code, 102
- workItem Types, 220-221
- WPMessages_en.properties, 117, 120
- WPMessages.properties file, 229
- WSHOME, 166

X

- XML files, 65
- XML
 - resource definition.
 - See prototypeXML.

XMLResourceAdapter.java file, 164

